

# TEXAS COMMERCIAL MOTOR VEHICLE DRIVER HANDBOOK



TEXAS DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC SAFETY  
Steven McCraw, Director  
Revised August, 2010

STRANDED MOTORISTS -- NEED HELP? CALL: 1-800-525-5555 or DIAL: “\*DPS” on cellular phones

### **IMPORTANT NOTICE TO OWNERS OF COMMERCIAL MOTOR VEHICLES**

Anyone required to have a CDL to drive a commercial motor vehicle is subject to alcohol/controlled substance testing. You or your driver(s) and vehicle(s) are also subject to other parts of the motor carrier safety regulations. The Texas Department of Public Safety has published a booklet entitled “***A Motor Carrier’s Guide to Improving Highway Safety***” which offers important information on these subjects. This booklet is available upon request at any Regional or District Office of the **Commercial Vehicle Enforcement Service**. Information about alcohol/controlled substance testing and other parts of the motor carrier safety regulations can be obtained by contacting the nearest office of the **Commercial Vehicle Service** of the DPS.

**NOTICE:** The Texas Department of Public Safety does not discriminate because of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age, or disability. Persons needing accommodation under the provisions of the Americans With Disabilities Act (ADA) should contact their local Driver License Office. ADA Grievance Procedures are published in the Texas Administrative Code, Title 37, Section 1.41.

# Table of Contents

	Page
PROLOGUE .....	iii
HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL.....	ix
PART ONE	
Section 1	Introduction..... 1-1
1.1	Commercial Driver License Tests..... 1-1
1.2	Other CDL Rules..... 1-1
Section 2	Driving Safely..... 2-1
2.1	Vehicle Inspection..... 2-1
2.2	Basic Control of Your Vehicle..... 2-9
2.3	Shifting Gears..... 2-11
2.4	Seeing..... 2-12
2.5	Communicating..... 2-13
2.6	Controlling Speed..... 2-15
2.7	Managing Space..... 2-16
2.8	Driving at Night..... 2-19
2.9	Driving in Fog..... 2-20
2.10	Driving in Winter..... 2-21
2.11	Driving in Very Hot Weather..... 2-22
2.12	Railroad Crossings..... 2-23
2.13	Mountain Driving..... 2-23
2.14	Seeing Hazards..... 2-24
2.15	Emergencies..... 2-27
2.16	Skid Control and Recovery..... 2-29
2.17	Accident Procedures..... 2-30
2.18	Fires..... 2-30
2.19	Staying Alert and Fit to Drive..... 2-31
2.20	Hazardous Materials Rules for All Commercial Drivers..... 2-33
Section 3	Transporting Cargo Safely..... 3-1
3.1	Inspecting Cargo..... 3-1
3.2	Weight & Balance..... 3-1
3.3	Securing Cargo..... 3-2
3.4	Other Cargo Needing Special Attention..... 3-3
PART TWO	
Section 4	Transporting Passengers..... 4-1
4.1	Pre-Trip Inspection..... 4-1
4.2	Loading and Trip Start..... 4-2
4.3	On the Road..... 4-3
4.4	After-Trip Vehicle Inspection..... 4-3
4.5	Prohibited Practices..... 4-4
4.6	Use of Brake-Door Interlocks..... 4-4
Section 5	Air Brakes..... 5-1
5.1	The Parts of an Air Brake System..... 5-1
5.2	Dual Air Brake..... 5-4
5.3	Inspecting Air Brake Systems..... 5-4
5.4	Using Air Brakes..... 5-5

Section 6	Combination Vehicles.....	6-1
6.1	Driving Combination Vehicles Safely.....	6-1
6.2	Combination Vehicle Air Brakes.....	6-3
6.3	Coupling and Uncoupling.....	6-5
6.4	Inspecting a Combination Vehicle.....	6-8
Section 7	Doubles and Triples.....	7-1
7.1	Pulling Double/Triple Trailers.....	7-1
7.2	Coupling and Uncoupling.....	7-1
7.3	Inspecting Doubles and Triples.....	7-3
7.4	Double/Triples Air Brake Check.....	7-4
Section 8	Tank Vehicles.....	8-1
8.1	Inspection Tank Vehicles.....	8-1
8.2	Driving Tank Vehicles.....	8-1
8.3	Safe Driving Rules.....	8-2
Section 9	Hazardous Materials.....	9-1
9.1	The Intent of the Regulations.....	9-1
9.2	Hazardous Materials Transportation - Who Does What.....	9-2
9.3	Communication Rules.....	9-2
9.4	Loading and Unloading.....	9-9
9.5	Bulk Packaging Marking Loading & Unloading.....	9-12
9.6	Hazardous Materials - Driving & Parking Rules.....	9-13
9.7	Hazardous Materials - Emergencies.....	9-15
Table A	Radioactive Separation Table.....	9-17
Table B	Table of Hazard Class Definitions.....	9-18
Glossary.....		9-18
Section 10	School Buses.....	10-1
10.1	Danger Zones and Use of Mirrors.....	10-1
10.2	Loading and Unloading.....	10-3
10.3	Emergency Exit and Evacuation.....	10-5
10.4	Railroad-highway Crossings.....	10-6
10.5	Student Management.....	10-8
10.6	Antilock Braking Systems.....	10-9
10.7	Special Safety Considerations.....	10-9
 PART THREE		
Section 11	Pre-Trip Vehicle Inspection Test.....	11-1
11.1	All Vehicles.....	11-1
11.2	School Bus/Truck/Tractor.....	11-3
11.3	School Bus Only.....	11-5
11.4	Trailer.....	11-6
11.5	Coach/Transit Bus.....	11-7
Section 12	Basic Vehicle Control Skills Test.....	12-1
12.1	Scoring.....	12-1
12.2	Exercises.....	12-1
Section 13	On Road Driving Test.....	13-1
13.1	How You Will Be Tested.....	13-1
Section 14	Special Requirements for Texas Commercial Motor Vehicles.....	14-1
14.1	Papers, Permits.....	14-1
14.2	Equipment.....	14-1



14.3	Limitations.....	14-11
14.4	Exceptions to Standard Vehicle Size Requirements.....	14-12
14.5	Operating Rules.....	14-13
14.6	Safety Practices.....	14-13
14.7	Registration of Vehicles.....	14-14
14.8	Federal Regulations.....	14-14
	Appendix A.....	14-16

# Prologue

In 1989, the Texas Legislature established the Commercial Driver License Law to comply with the federal Commercial Motor Vehicle Safety Act of 1986. These laws were passed to reduce traffic accidents involving commercial motor vehicles.

The following handbook has been designed to assist you, the professional driver, to pass the required knowledge and skills tests. Special attention should be paid to the key points listed throughout the handbook in the right-hand margin. At the end of most chapters are relevant study and review questions. Although comprehensive, this handbook was not designed to be an exact reference to the Texas Commercial Driver License Law.

---

## Who needs a Commercial Driver License?

All drivers who operate a commercial motor vehicle (see definition on page 1-1) will be required to have a Commercial Driver License (CDL) by April 1, 1992. The law does provide for some exemptions. If the driver meets one or more of the criteria listed below, he will not be required to have a CDL. However, the driver will be required to have a Class A, B, or C Non-CDL License.

## Who is exempt from a CDL? (Certification form CDL-2 required)

Persons operating the following vehicles are exempt from a Commercial Driver License:

1. A vehicle that is controlled and operated by a farmer; and used to transport agricultural products, farm machinery, or farm supplies to or from a farm; and not used in the operations of a common or contract motor carrier; and used within 150 air miles of the person's farm.
2. A fire-fighting or emergency vehicle necessary to the preservation of life or property or the execution of emergency governmental functions, whether operated by an employee of a political subdivision or by a volunteer fire fighter (this includes operators of industrial emergency vehicles);
3. A military vehicle, when operated for military purposes by military personnel, members of the Reserves and National Guard on active duty, including personnel on full-time National Guard duty, personnel on part-time training, and National Guard military technicians; or
4. A recreational vehicle that is driven for personal use.

5. A vehicle that is owned, leased, or controlled by an air carrier, as defined by Texas Transportation Code (TRC), Section 21.155, and that is driven or operated exclusively by an employee of the air carrier only on the premises of an airport, as defined by the TRC, Section 22.001, on service roads to which the public does not have access.

6. A vehicle used exclusively to transport seed cotton modules or cotton burs.

## Different Classes of Commercial Driver Licenses

There are three (3) basic types or classes of Commercial Driver Licenses. They are described below. For further information, refer to the diagram on page ix. This diagram helps a person determine which class of license he/she needs and which section(s) of the handbook to study.

**CLASS A:** Any combination of vehicles with a gross combination weight rating of 26,001 pounds or more, provided the gross vehicle weight rating of the vehicle or vehicles towed exceeds 10,000 pounds;

**CLASS B:** Any single vehicle with a gross vehicle weight rating of 26,001 pounds or more, any one of those vehicles towing a vehicle that does not exceed 10,000 pounds gross vehicle weight rating, and any vehicle designed to transport 24 passengers or more, including the driver; and a Class B license will be restricted to operating busses under 26,001 pounds GVWR if the skills test is taken in a bus with a GVWR of less than 26,001 pounds; and

**CLASS C:** Any single vehicle or combination of vehicles that is not a Class A or Class B if the vehicle is:

- 1) designed to transport 16 to 23 passengers including the driver; or
- 2) used in the transportation of hazardous materials that require the vehicle to be placarded under 49 CFR, Part 172, Subpart F.

## Learner's License

An applicant may be issued a Learner's License for any class license listed above if he meets the basic requirements and passes the appropriate knowledge tests. This will enable him to legally practice and prepare for

the road tests. While operating a commercial motor vehicle with a Learner's License he will be restricted to having a licensed CDL operator, with the proper class of license, in the front seat with him. (See Endorsements and Restrictions section.)

In addition to the general driver's license restrictions and endorsements, a CDL holder may have one or more of the following restrictions or endorsements applied to his license.

Endorsements and Restrictions for Commercial Driver License:

Code	Endorsement
T	Double/Triple Trailer
P	Passenger
N	Tank Vehicle
H	Hazardous Material
X	Combination of N and H
S	School Buses
Code	Restriction
M	Intrastate Only (commercial motor vehicle)
L	No Air Brakes
P	Licensed CDL operator in front seat -all classes CMV's
	Licensed CDL operator in front seat -CMV's above Class B
	Licensed CDL operator in front seat -CMV's above Class C

For a listing of the general driver license restrictions and endorsements, see the back of a Texas driver license.

### Farm-Related Service Industry (FRSI) Waiver

The Texas Department of Public Safety may waive the Commercial Driver License (CDL) knowledge and skills tests required by TRC, Section 522.012, and provide for the issuance of a restricted CDL to an employee of a Farm-Related Service Industry (FRSI). Seasonal drivers of the following FRSI are authorized by federal and state regulations to obtain the waiver and be issued a restricted CDL: (1) Farm retail outlets and suppliers; (2) agrichemical businesses; (3) custom harvesters (includes cotton modular operators); and (4) livestock feeders. FRSI CDL's shall be issued for Class B and Class C vehicles only (Class A vehicles are not included in the waiver). The FRSI CDL can only be valid for 180 days each twelve month period as indicated on the license.

Applicants are not required to pass CDL knowledge or skills tests to obtain an FRSI CDL. However, by rule, the Department will require applicants for a Class B FRSI CDL

to pass the 20 question Class A-B Rules Test and a Skills Test in a Class B vehicle before the Class B FRSI CDL will be issued.

An applicant for an FRSI CDL must have a good driving record and at least one year of driving experience in any type of vehicle. A driver who has not held any motor vehicle operator's license for at least one year will not be eligible for the FRSI CDL. Drivers who have between one and two years of driving experience must demonstrate the good driving record requirements for their entire driving history. Drivers with more than two years of driving experience must meet the good driving record requirements for the two-year period preceding their date of application for an FRSI CDL. A good driving record is defined as:

- 1) No multiple licenses;
- 2) No driver license suspensions, revocations, disqualifications, or cancellations of any kind;
- 3) No convictions in any type of motor vehicle for driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs, leaving the scene of an accident, or committing any felony involving a motor vehicle;
- 4) No convictions whatsoever in any type of motor vehicle for serious traffic violations, i.e., speeding at 15 miles per hour or more above the posted speed limit; reckless driving, improper or erratic lane changes; following too closely; driving a CMV without a CDL in possession; or driving a CMV without a CDL; and
- 5) No convictions in any type of motor vehicle for accident-connected traffic law violations and no record of at-fault accidents.

A holder of an FRSI CDL may not transport hazardous materials in placardable quantities except for the following amounts:

- 1) Transport 1,000 gallons or less of diesel fuel;
- 2) Transport 3,000 gallons or less of liquid fertilizer; or
- 3) Transport any quantity of solid fertilizer not mixed with any organic substance.

No other placarded hazardous materials shall be transported by holders of an FRSI CDL. The FRSI CDL confers the right to carry hazardous materials as listed above. No hazardous materials endorsement can be placed on an FRSI CDL.

An FRSI CDL driver may only be permitted to operate commercial motor vehicles within 150 miles of the employer's place of business or the farm currently being served.

CDL sanctions/disqualifications apply to the FRSI CDL driver just as they do the unrestricted CDL driver. A driver who operates a commercial motor vehicle that is not included in the farm-related service industry waiver or who violates the restriction on the FRSI is subject to a fine as provided in state law (TRC, Section 522.043), and suspension of driving privileges as provided in state law (TRC, Section 521.294).

The FRSI CDL has reciprocity in all states.

An applicant for an FRSI CDL must meet all other CDL requirements as provided by 49 Code of Federal Regulations, Part 383, TRC, Section 522, and Department administrative regulations. This includes age minimum (age 18 intrastate commerce and age 21 interstate commerce), language, vision, and physical requirements. Applicants must complete the CDL-1F application form when applying for the FRSI CDL, renewing the FRSI CDL, or changing the seasonal validity period once each year and the applicant's employer must complete the back side of the application each time.

The fees for an FRSI CDL are the same as for a regular CDL. \$60 for originals or renewals, \$10 each time the seasonal validity period has to be updated (once each year).

### **General Requirements**

The following are the general requirements a person must meet in order to apply for a Commercial Driver License.

### **INTERSTATE**

The driver must reside in the state of Texas.

He must certify that he meets the qualification requirements of 49 CFR, Part 391, which are briefly:

- 1) be 21 years of age,
- 2) be able to read and speak the English language,
- 3) no loss of limb that has not been waived,
- 4) no impairment of hand, finger, arm, foot, or leg that interferes with driving,
- 5) no diabetes requiring insulin for control,
- 6) no heart problems,
- 7) no respiratory dysfunction,
- 8) no high blood pressure,
- 9) no rheumatic, arthritic, orthopedic, muscular, neuro-muscular, or vascular problems that would affect vehicle control,
- 10) no epilepsy or other condition likely to cause loss of consciousness,
- 11) no mental, nervous, organic, or functional disease or psychiatric disorder likely to interfere with vehicle control,
- 12) vision 20/40 or better in each eye, not color blind,
- 13) have good hearing,

- 14) not addicted to drugs, and
- 15) not addicted to alcohol.

Completion of a form CDL-4 is required.

### **INTRASTATE**

The driver must reside in the state of Texas.

The driver must be at least 18 years of age.

English language is not required.

Intrastate drivers must meet all of the fitness requirements listed above for interstate drivers unless exempted. Intrastate drivers who do not meet the vision requirements of 49 CFR, Part 391 may be able to qualify for a vision waiver. A driver must have 20/40 or better distant binocular acuity with or without corrective lenses in order to qualify for the waiver. Applicants for a vision waiver must apply through the Department's License Issuance Bureau, PO Box 4087, Austin, Texas 78773-0310.

Federal physical requirements of 49 CFR, Part 391, do not apply to the following commercial motor vehicle operators who will be required to hold a CDL, but they must meet state medical and vision requirements.

A driver who operates a commercial motor vehicle in intrastate commerce, not transporting property requiring a hazardous material placard, and was regularly employed in Texas in intrastate commerce prior to August 28, 1989. (CDL must be restricted to intrastate).

School bus drivers employed by a private or parochial school and school bus drivers employed by a company that operates school busses under contract with a school while transporting school children and/or school personnel from home to school and from school to home.

Persons operating a vehicle for a government entity. (This includes school bus drivers employed directly by a school district).

Persons occasionally transporting personal property not for compensation nor in the furtherance of a commercial enterprise.

Persons transporting corpses or sick or injured people.

Private transportation of passengers.

Intracity zone drivers with limited exception who possess a DOT medical examiner's certificate restricted to intracity operation. (Medical certificate must be presented to a DPS employee at the time of application).

The transportation of farm machinery, supplies, or both, to or from a farm for custom-harvesting operations on a farm or the transporting of custom-harvested operations to storage or market.

Drivers operating motor vehicles controlled and operated by a beekeeper engaged in the seasonal transportation of bees.

The operation of a vehicle in intrastate operations used in oil or water well servicing or oil or water well drilling and which is constructed as a machine, consisting, in general, of a mast, an engine for power, a draw works, and a chassis permanently constructed or assembled for such purpose. (CDL must be restricted to intrastate).

The operation of a mobile crane that is an unladen self-propelled vehicle constructed as a machine used to raise, shift, or lower weights. (CDL must be restricted to intrastate).

The completion of either form CDL-5 or CDL-10 will be required.

## Tests

A driver will be required to pass certain knowledge and skills tests depending on the type of Commercial Driver License and/or endorsements he needs. These tests are described in Section 1.1

## Knowledge Tests

The knowledge tests are multiple choice and matching type tests. A person must answer 80% of the questions correctly before he will be allowed to take the skills test.

## Safety Inspection

Before the driver begins his skills test the examiner will conduct a safety inspection of the vehicle. This will include equipment requirements, liability insurance requirements, and registration requirements. If the vehicle does not pass inspection, the skills test will be postponed.

The vehicle will be inspected for the following:

- Current liability insurance
- Headlamps (for bright and dim)
- Two tail lamps (one for 1959 models or earlier)
- Two stop lamps (one for 1959 models or earlier)
- Turn signals (1960 or later models)
- Horn
- Inspection certificate
- Exhaust system
- License plate (current) (2)
- Windshield wiper

- Rearview mirror
- Safety belts
- Approved glass coating material (if applicable)
- Clearance lamps
- Side marker lamps
- Side reflectors
- Turn signals (all models)
- Mud flaps (four or more tires on rear axle)
- Hazard warning lamps
- Fire extinguisher (if required)
- Flashing lights (school buses - two red alternately flashing lamps to the front and rear)
- "School Bus" sign 8 inches in height on front and rear of bus (when in use as school bus)
- Reflective triangles (if required)
- Full service brakes
- Hydraulic brake
- Parking brake

## Skills Tests

Of the skills tests, a driver will be required to take the Air Brake Inspection Test and the Road Test. HE WILL NOT BE REQUIRED TO TAKE THE BASIC CONTROL SKILLS TEST.

The first part of the skills test is the air brake inspection test. This is a pass/fail test. If the driver is unable to pass this part of the skills test, he/she will not be allowed to continue and take the road test. The air brake test requires the driver to demonstrate his or her knowledge and ability to conduct a complete air brake safety inspection. The air brake safety inspection will include:

- 1) Leak in system
- 2) Warning signals
- 3) Emergency brakes

For more information about air brakes, refer to Section 5.3, page 5-4 and Section 10.

## Road Test

A driver will be required to take a Road Test in the vehicle he plans to drive or one in the same class. The Road Test will consist of the following maneuvers:

1. Start
2. Quick Smooth Stop
3. Parallel Parking
4. Backing
5. Upshifting
6. Downshifting
7. Lane Change
8. Merge
9. Use of Lanes
10. Right-of-Way

11. Posture
12. Approach to Corner
13. Traffic Signals
14. Traffic Signs
15. Left Turns
16. Right Turns

### Pass or Fail

The official conducting the examination will guide the driver through the Road Tests. If the driver successfully performs the required maneuvers, he will be issued a Commercial Driver License. If not, he will be required to take the Road Test again another day.

The following factors will result in failure of the Road Test:

- Having too many deductions (more than 30)
  - Having or causing an accident
  - Driving dangerously
  - Not cooperating
  - Violating the law
- 

### Skills Test Exemptions

A driver may be exempt from the skills test if he can certify to meeting all of the following requirements:

1. He is currently licensed.
2. During the two-year period immediately prior to applying for a Commercial Driver License, he
  - a. has not had more than one license;
  - b. has not had any license suspended, revoked, or cancelled;
  - c. has not had any convictions for a disqualifying offense for any type of motor vehicle, such as:
    - Driving While Intoxicated (DWI)
    - Driving Under the Influence of Drugs (DUID)
    - Blood/Breath Test Refusal (BBTR)
    - Failed to Stop and Render Aid (FSRA)
    - Felony involving use of a commercial motor vehicle
    - The use of a commercial motor vehicle in the commission of a felony involving manufacturing, distributing, or dispensing a controlled substance
    - Any violation of state or local law relating to motor vehicle traffic control arising in connection with any traffic accident in which the aforementioned driver was at fault
  - d. Has not had more than one serious traffic violation:
    - Speeding 15 mph over the limit
    - Reckless driving
    - Following too close
    - Unsafe lane change
    - A violation of the law relating to traffic control arising in connection with a fatal accident excluding parking, weight, and vehicle defect violations
    - Driving a CMV without a CDL

- Driving a CMV without a CDL in possession
3. He is regularly employed in a job requiring the operation of a commercial motor vehicle and
    - a. has previously taken and passed a skills test given by a state with a classified licensing system and the test was behind-the-wheel in a representative vehicle for that driver license classification; or
    - b. has operated, for at least two years immediately preceding application for a Commercial Driver License, a vehicle representative of the commercial motor vehicle he operates or expects to operate.

This exemption only applies to drivers whose two-year driving experience has been legal (properly licensed) and who have been driving vehicles that are exempt (fire-fighters, farmers, etc.).

---

### Texas Drivers Applying for a Commercial Driver License

A driver currently licensed in Texas will be required to present their driver license, proof of their Social Security number (examples: actual Social Security card, health insurance card issued by governmental agencies, Veterans Administration card, peace officer's license issued by TCLEOSE, government driver license, military identification card, DD-214, pilot's license issued by FAA, and Medicare card. A facsimile [flea market] or metal Social Security card are not acceptable). Also they will be required to complete an application and a Qualification Certification form (CDL-4, CDL-5, or CDL-10) to certify that they meet or are exempt from certain physical qualifications, along with any other necessary certification forms previously mentioned. All the information necessary to take and pass the required CDL tests is contained in the Texas Commercial Motor Vehicle Driver Handbook. If a Texas driver is upgrading from a Class C license to a higher class license, he will be required to take the Texas Commercial Rules Test. (See Section 13 of this handbook, page 13-1).

### Others Applying for a Commercial Driver License

If a person is applying for a Texas driver license for the first time, he will have to fulfill requirements in addition to those for a Texas driver. He will be required to complete an original application for a Texas driver license and take any knowledge and/or skills tests required. The tests are derived from both the Texas Drivers Handbook and the Texas Commercial Motor Vehicle Drivers Handbook. All necessary forms/handbooks are available at any Driver License Office.

### Application

If a person does not pass the knowledge and skills tests on the date of his first application, his incomplete application will be retained in the Driver License Office for 90 days. After 90 days and he has not yet passed all required tests, the application will be destroyed and a new application, fee and tests will be required.



## **Fees**

A CDL will require a fee of \$60.00 for six years. If a driver already has a valid Texas driver license (Class A, B, or C) and converts to a Commercial Drivers License, he will be given \$4.00 credit for each full year remaining on his current license.

A \$10.00 fee is required from an applicant who makes a change in the class or type of license, endorsement, or restriction, or one that adds a class of vehicle(s) to a CDL.

The fee for a Learner's License for commercial motor vehicles is \$16.00, \$20.00, or \$24.00.

The fee for a duplicate license is \$10.00.

---

## **Implied Consent**

A person who drives a commercial motor vehicle in this state is deemed to have given consent to submit to the taking of one or more specimens of the person's breath, blood, or urine for the purpose of analysis to determine the alcohol concentration or the presence in the person's body of a controlled substance or drug.

## **Disqualifications**

If a driver refuses to submit to a Blood-Alcohol Content test while driving a commercial motor vehicle, he will lose his Commercial Driver License for the period of time specified in the law. Other disqualifications that can cause a driver to lose a Commercial Driver License are explained in Section 1.2, pages 1-2 of this manual.

---

## **Reporting Convictions**

Also explained in Section 1.2 is the requirement for a driver to report all traffic convictions to his employer. Any out-of-state traffic convictions must be reported to the Texas Department of Public Safety.

---

## **Are the Tests Difficult?**

The information contained in this handbook is very technical. A general working knowledge of commercial motor vehicles and their operation may not be sufficient preparation for the CDL tests. Even seasoned, professional commercial drivers NEED to study this handbook before making application for a CDL. (If a person operates a commercial motor vehicle in Texas, he should also be familiar with the Texas Drivers Handbook, especially the section titled Special Requirements for Commercial Motor Vehicles. This same

information is also found in Section 13 of this CDL Handbook).

---

## **Where Do I Go?**

Not all field stations will offer Skills Tests. Office addresses and telephone numbers are located in the telephone book under "Texas Department of Public Safety" or "Drivers License."

## **USA PATRIOT Act**

The Uniting and Strengthening America by providing Appropriate Tools Required To Intercept and Obstruct Terrorism (USA Patriot) Act was enacted on October 25, 2001.



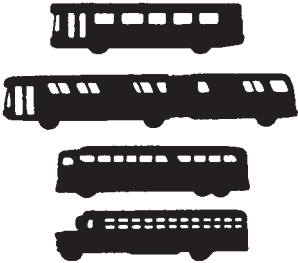


Section 1012 of the USA of the USA PATRIOT Act amended 49 U.S.C. Chapter 51 by adding a new section 5103a titled "Limitation on issuance of hazmat licenses." Section 5103a(a)(1) provides:

A State may not issue to any individual a license to operate a motor vehicle transporting in commerce a hazardous material unless the Secretary of Transportation has first determined, upon receipt of a notification, under subsection (c)(1)(B), that the individual does not pose a security risk warranting denial of the license.

Section 5103a(a)(2) subjects license renewals to the same requirements.

Section 5103 a(c) requires the Attorney General, upon the request of a State in connection with issuance of a HME, to carry out a background records check of the individual applying for the endorsement and, upon completing the check, to notify the Secretary (as delegated to the Administrator of TSA) of the results. The Secretary then determines whether the individual poses a security risk warranting denial of the endorsement. The background records check must consist of: (1) A check of the relevant criminal history databases; (2) in the case of an alien, a check of the relevant databases to determine the status of the alien under U.S. immigration laws; and (3) as appropriate, a check of the relevant international databases through Interpol-U.S. National Central Bureau or other appropriate means.

# How To Use This Manual

If you want to get a license to drive this type of vehicle or a similar tank vehicle*	Study these sections of the driver's manual
	Section 1: Introduction Section 2: Driving Safely Section 3: Cargo* Section 5: Air Brakes Section 6: Combination Vehicles Section 7: Doubles and Triples Section 8: Tank Vehicles (if needed) Section 9: Haz-Mat (if needed) Section 11: Pre-Trip VI Test Section 12: Vehicle Control Section 13: Road Driving Section 14: Special Requirements
	Section 1: Introduction Section 2: Driving Safely Section 3: Cargo* Section 5: Air Brakes Section 6: Combination Vehicles Section 7: Doubles and Triples Section 8: Tank Vehicles (if needed) Section 9: Haz-Mat (if needed) Section 11: Pre-Trip VI Test Section 12: Vehicle Control Section 13: Road Driving Section 14: Special Requirements
	Section 1: Introduction Section 2: Driving Safely Section 3: Cargo* Section 4: Passengers Section 5: Air Brakes (if needed) Section 10: School Buses Section 11: Pre-Trip VI Test Section 12: Vehicle Control Section 13: Road Driving Section 14: Special Requirements
	Section 1: Introduction Section 2: Driving Safely Section 3: Cargo* Section 5: Air Brakes (if needed) Section 9: Haz-Mat (if needed) Section 11: Pre-Trip (if needed) Section 12: Vehicle Control Section 13: Road Driving Section 14: Special Requirements
(CDL required only if these vehicles are used to haul hazardous materials) 	Section 1: Introduction Section 2: Driving Safely Section 3: Cargo* Section 9: Haz-Mat

\*If you want a tank vehicle endorsement, study especially Section 8

---

# PART ONE

---

1. Introduction
2. Driving Safely
3. Transporting Cargo Safely

THIS PART IS FOR ALL  
COMMERCIAL DRIVERS

---

# Section 1

---

Introduction

CDL

Knowledge Tests

GVWR

Serious Traffic Violations

THIS SECTION IS FOR  
ALL COMMERCIAL DRIVERS

# Section 1: Introduction

## This Section Explains

- **CDL Tests**
- **Other Safety Rules**

There is a federal requirement that each state have minimum standards for the licensing of commercial drivers. This manual provides driver license testing information for drivers who wish to have a commercial driver license (CDL). This manual does NOT provide information on all the federal and state requirements needed before you can drive a commercial motor vehicle (CMV). You may have to contact your state driver licensing authority for additional information.

You must have a CDL to operate:

- A single vehicle with a gross vehicle weight rating GVWR of more than 26,000 pounds.
- A trailer with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds if the gross combination weight rating is more than 26,000 pounds.
- A vehicle designed to transport more than 15 persons including the driver.
- Any size vehicle which requires hazardous materials placards.

(Your state may have additional definitions of CMVs.)

To get a CDL, you must pass knowledge and skill tests. This manual will help you pass the tests.

---

## 1.1 COMMERCIAL DRIVER LICENSE TESTS

You will have to take one or more knowledge tests, depending on what class of license and what endorsements you need. The CDL knowledge tests include:

- **Knowledge Tests**
  - The general knowledge test, taken by all applicants.
  - The passenger transport test, taken by all bus driver applicants.
  - The air brakes test, which you must take if your vehicle has air brakes.
  - The combination vehicles test, which is required if you want to drive combination vehicles.

- The Hazardous Materials Test, required if you want to haul hazardous material or waste in amounts which require placarding.
- The Tanker Test, required if you want to haul liquids in bulk.
- The Doubles/Triples Test, required if you want to pull double or triple trailers.
- School Bus Test, required if you want to drive vehicles designated as school buses.
- Pre-Trip vehicle inspection test, taken by all Class A and B applicants. For information concerning the Pre-Trip inspection test, refer to Sections 2 and 11.

- **Skills Test**

If you pass the required knowledge test(s), you can take the CDL skills tests. There are two types of general skills that will be tested: basic vehicle control and on-road driving. You must take these tests in the type of vehicle for which you wish to be licensed.

**Basic Vehicle Control.** You will be tested on your skill to control the vehicle. You will be asked to move your vehicle forward, backward, and turn it within a defined area. These areas may be marked with traffic lanes, cones, barriers, or something similar. The examiner will tell you how each control test is to be done. Section 11 of this manual explains more about this test.

**On-Road Test.** You will be tested on your skill to safely drive your vehicle in a variety of traffic situations. The situations may include left and right turns, intersections, railway crossings, curves, up and down grades, single or multi-lane roads, streets, or highways. The examiner will tell you where to drive. Section 12 of this manual explains more about this test.

---

## 1.2 OTHER CDL RULES

There are other federal and state rules which affect drivers operating CMVs in all states.

- You cannot have more than one license. If you break this rule, a court may fine you up to \$5,000 or put you in jail. Keep your home state license and return any others.
- You must notify your employer within 30 days of conviction for any traffic violations (except parking). This is true

no matter what type of vehicle you were driving.

- You must notify your motor vehicle licensing agency within 30 days if you are convicted in any other jurisdiction of any traffic violation (except parking). This is true no matter what type of vehicle you were driving.
- You must notify your employer if your license is suspended, revoked, or canceled, or if you are disqualified from driving.
- You must give your employer information on all driving jobs you have held for the past 10 years. You must do this when you apply for a commercial driving job.
- No one can drive a commercial motor vehicle without a CDL. A court may fine you up to \$5,000 or put you in jail for breaking this rule.
- Your employer may not let you drive a commercial motor vehicle if you have more than one license or if your CDL is suspended or revoked. A court may fine the employer up to \$5,000 or put him/her in jail for breaking this rule.
- All states are connected to one computerized system to share information about CDL drivers. The states will check on drivers' accident records and be sure that drivers don't get more than one CDL.
- You will lose your CDL for at least one year for a first offense:
  - If you drive a CMV under the influence of alcohol or a controlled substance (for example, illegal drugs).
  - If you leave the scene of an accident involving a CMV you were driving.
  - If you use a CMV to commit a felony.
  - If you refuse to submit to a test to determine your alcohol concentration or the presence of a controlled substance while operating a CMV.
  - If you cause the death of another person through the negligent or criminal operation of a CMV.
  - If you drive a CMV while your CDL is revoked, suspended, canceled or disqualified.

If the offense occurs while you are operating a CMV that is placarded for hazardous materials, you will lose your CDL for at least three years. You will lose your CDL for life for a second offense. You will also lose your CDL for life if you use a CMV to commit a felony involving controlled substances.

### ● **Serious Traffic Violations**

You will lose your CDL:

- For at least 60 days if you have committed two serious traffic violations or one violation of a law that regulates the operation of a motor vehicle at a railroad grade cross-

ing within a three-year period involving a CMV.

-For at least 120 days for three serious traffic violations or two violations of a law that regulates the operation of a motor vehicle at a railroad grade crossing within a three-year period.

-For at least one year if convicted of three violations of a law that regulates the operation of a motor vehicle at a railroad grade crossing that occurs within a three-year period.

"Serious traffic violations" are excessive speeding (15 mph or more above the posted limit), reckless driving, improper or erratic lane changes, following a vehicle too closely, traffic offenses committed in a CMV in connection with fatal traffic accidents, driving a CMV without a CDL, and driving a CMV without a CDL in possession.

### ● **Disqualifications**

- It is illegal to operate a CMV if your Blood Alcohol Concentration (BAC) is .04% or more. You will lose your CDL for one year for your first offense. You will lose it for life for your second offense. If your blood alcohol concentration is less than 0.04% but you have any detectable amount, you will be put out-of-service for 24 hours.

### ● **Implied Consent**

- If you operate a CMV, you shall be deemed to have given your consent to alcohol testing for the above-mentioned violations.

These rules will improve highway safety for you and for all highway users.

Your state may have additional rules which you must also obey.

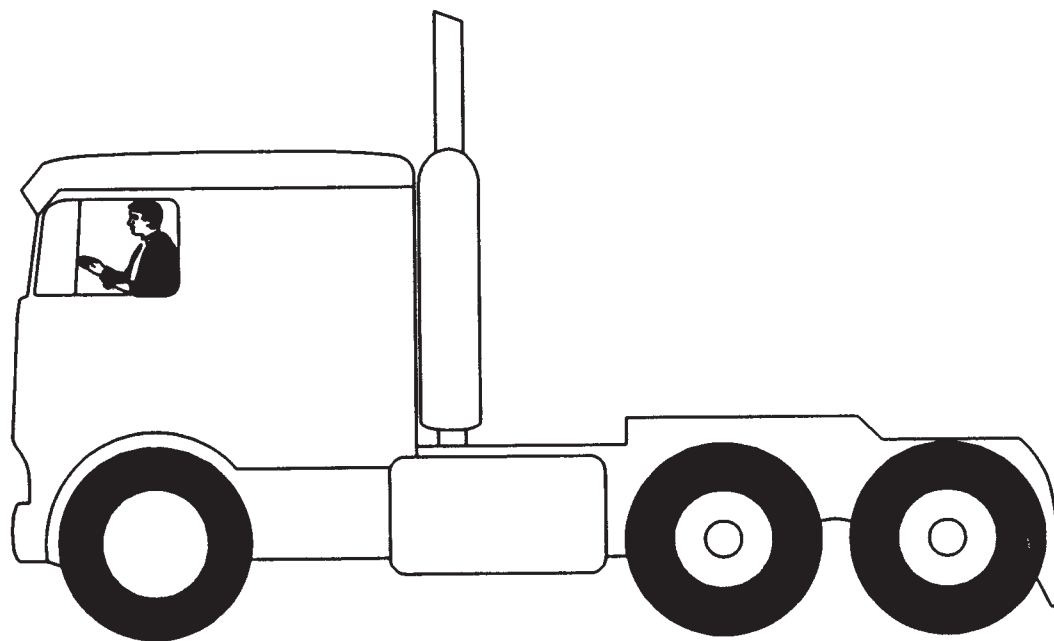


---

## Section 2

---

### Driving Safely



THIS PART IS FOR ALL  
COMMERCIAL DRIVERS

# Section 2: Driving Safely

## This Section Covers

- Vehicle Inspection
- Vehicle Control
- Shifting Gears
- Seeing
- Communicating
- Speed & Space Management
- Night Driving
- Winter Driving
- Mountain Driving
- Emergencies
- Staying Alert

This section contains knowledge and safe driving information that all commercial drivers should know. You must pass a test on this information to get a CDL.

This section does NOT have specific information on air brakes, combination vehicles, doubles, or passenger vehicles. You must read other sections of this manual to learn about them.

This section does have basic information on hazardous materials (HazMat) that all drivers should know. If you need a HazMat endorsement, you should study Section 9.

## 2.1 VEHICLE INSPECTION

Safety is the most important reason you inspect your vehicle. Safety for yourself and for other road users.

### ● Why Inspect?

A vehicle defect found during an inspection could save you problems later. You could have a breakdown on the road that will cost time and dollars, or even worse, a crash caused by the defect.

Federal and state laws require that drivers inspect their vehicles. Federal and state inspectors also may inspect your vehicles. If they judge the vehicle to be unsafe, they will put it "out of service" until it is fixed.

### ● Types of Vehicle Inspection

**Pre-trip Inspection.** A pre-trip inspection will help you find problems that could cause a crash or breakdown.

**During a Trip.** For safety you should:

Watch gauges for signs of trouble.

- Use your senses to check for problems (look, listen, smell, feel).
- Check critical items when you stop:
  - Tires, wheels and rims.
  - Brakes.
  - Lights and reflectors.
  - Brake and electrical connections to trailer.
  - Trailer coupling devices.
  - Cargo securement devices.

**After-trip Inspection and Report.** You should do an after-trip inspection at the end of the trip, day, or tour of duty on each vehicle you operated. It may include filling out a vehicle condition report listing any problems you find. The inspection report helps the motor carrier know when the vehicle needs repairs.

### ● What to Look For

#### Tire Problems

- Too much or too little air pressure.
- Bad wear. You need at least 4/32 inch tread depth in every major groove on front tires. You need 2/32 inch on other tires. No fabric should show through the tread or sidewall.
- Cuts or other damage.
- Tread separation.
- Dual tires that come in contact with each other or parts of the vehicle.
- Mismatched sizes.
- Radial and bias-ply tires used together.
- Cut or cracked valve stems.
- regrooved, recapped, or retreaded tires on the front wheels of a bus. These are prohibited.

#### Wheel and Rim Problems

- Damaged rims.

Rust around wheel nuts may mean the nuts are loose--check tightness. After a tire has been changed, stop a short while later and re-check tightness of nuts.

- Missing clamps, spacers, studs, or lugs means danger.
- Mismatched, bent, or cracked lock rings are dangerous.
- Wheels or rims that have had welding repairs are not safe.

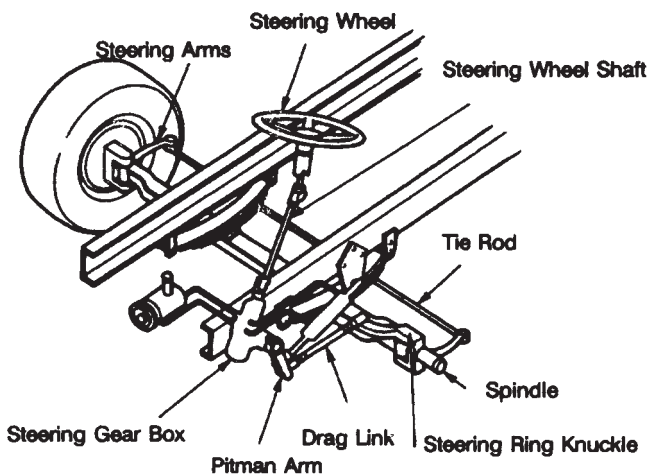
### Bad Brake Drums or Shoes

- Cracked drums.
- Shoes or pads with oil, grease, or brake fluid on them.
- Shoes worn dangerously thin, missing, or broken.

### Steering System Defects (See Figure 2-1)

- Missing nuts, bolts, cotter keys, or other parts.
- Bent, loose, or broken parts, such as steering column, steering gear box, or tie rods.
- If power steering equipped--hoses, pumps, and fluid level; check for leaks.
- Steering wheel play of more than 10 degrees (approximately two inches movement at the rim of a 20-inch steering wheel) can make it hard to steer.

Figure 2-1 Examples of Steering System Key Parts



**Suspension System Defects.** The suspension system holds up the vehicle and its load. It keeps the axles in place. Therefore, broken suspension parts can be extremely dangerous. Look for:

- Spring hangers (Figure 2-2) that allow movement of axle from proper position.

- Cracked or broken spring hangers.
- Missing or broken leaves in any leaf spring. If one-fourth or more are missing, it will put the vehicle "out of service" but any defect could be dangerous (Figure 2-3).
- Broken leaves in a multi-leaf spring or leaves that have shifted so they might hit a tire or other part.
- Leaking shock absorbers (Figure 2-4).
- Torque rod or arm, u-bolts, spring hangers, or other axle positioning parts that are cracked, damaged, or missing (Figure 2-2).
- Air suspension systems that are damaged and/or leaking (Figure 2-4).
- Any loose, cracked, broken, or missing frame members.

Figure 2-2 Key Suspension Parts

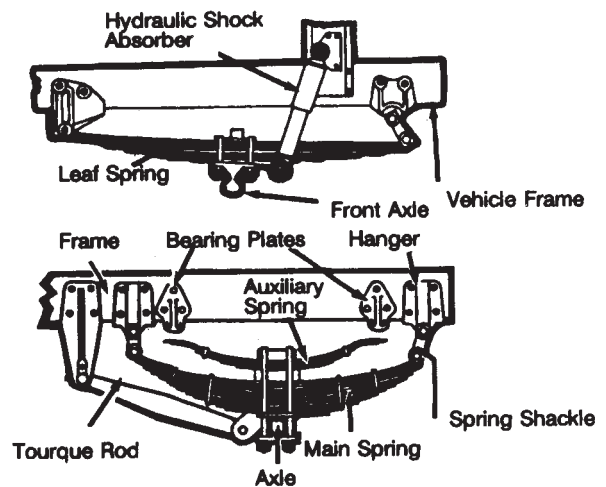


Figure 2-3 Safety Defect: Broken Leaf in Leaf Spring

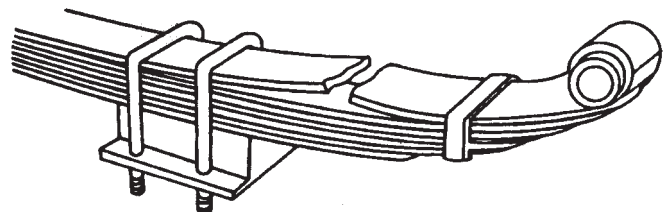
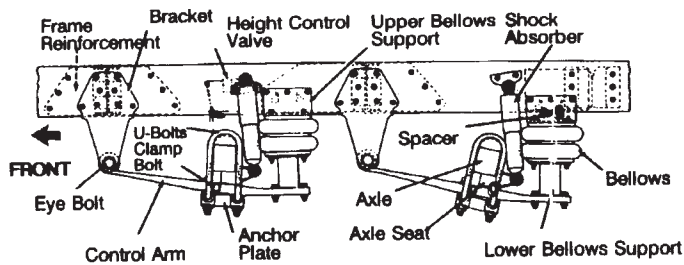


Figure 2-4 Air Suspension Parts



**Exhaust System Defects.** A broken exhaust system can let poison fumes into the cab or sleeper berth. Look for:

- Loose, broken, or missing exhaust pipes, mufflers, tailpipes, or vertical stacks.
- Loose, broken, or missing mounting brackets, clamps, bolts, or nuts.
- Exhaust system parts rubbing against fuel system parts, tires, or other moving parts of vehicle.
- Exhaust system parts that are leaking.

**Emergency Equipment.** Vehicles must be equipped with emergency equipment. Look for:

- Fire extinguisher(s).
- Spare electrical fuses (unless equipped with circuit breakers).
- Warning devices for parked vehicles (for example, three reflective warning triangles).

**Cargo (Trucks).** You must make sure the truck is not overloaded and the cargo is balanced and secured before each trip. If the cargo contains hazardous materials, you must inspect for proper papers and placarding.

#### • CDL Written Pre-Trip Vehicle Inspection Test

In order to obtain a CDL, you will be required to pass a written pre-trip vehicle inspection test. You will be tested to see if you know whether your vehicle is safe to drive. Section 10 of this manual tells you what to inspect and how to inspect it.

#### • A Seven-Step Inspection Method

**Method of Inspection.** You should do a pre-trip inspection the same way each time so you will learn all the steps and be less likely to forget something. The following seven-step method should be useful. Guides are shown in Figures 2-5, 2-6, and 2-7.

**Approaching the Vehicle.** Notice general condition. Look for damage or vehicle leaning to one side. Look under the vehicle for fresh oil, coolant, grease, or fuel leaks. Check the area around the vehicle for hazards to vehicle movement (people, other vehicles, objects, low hanging wires, limbs, etc.)

#### 1: Vehicle Overview

**Review Last Vehicle Inspection Report.** Drivers may have to make a vehicle inspection report in writing each day. The motor carrier must repair any items in the report that affects safety and certify on the report that repairs were made or were unnecessary. You must sign the report only if defects were noted and certified to be repaired or not needed to be repaired.

#### Test Your Knowledge

1. What is the most important reason for doing a vehicle inspection?
2. What things should you check during a trip?
3. Name some key steering system parts.
4. Name some suspension system defects.
5. What three kinds of emergency equipment must you have?
6. What is the minimum tread depth for front tires?
7. For other tires?

These questions may be on the test. If you can't answer them all, re-read the last four pages.

## Vehicle Inspection Guide (Key Locations To Inspect)

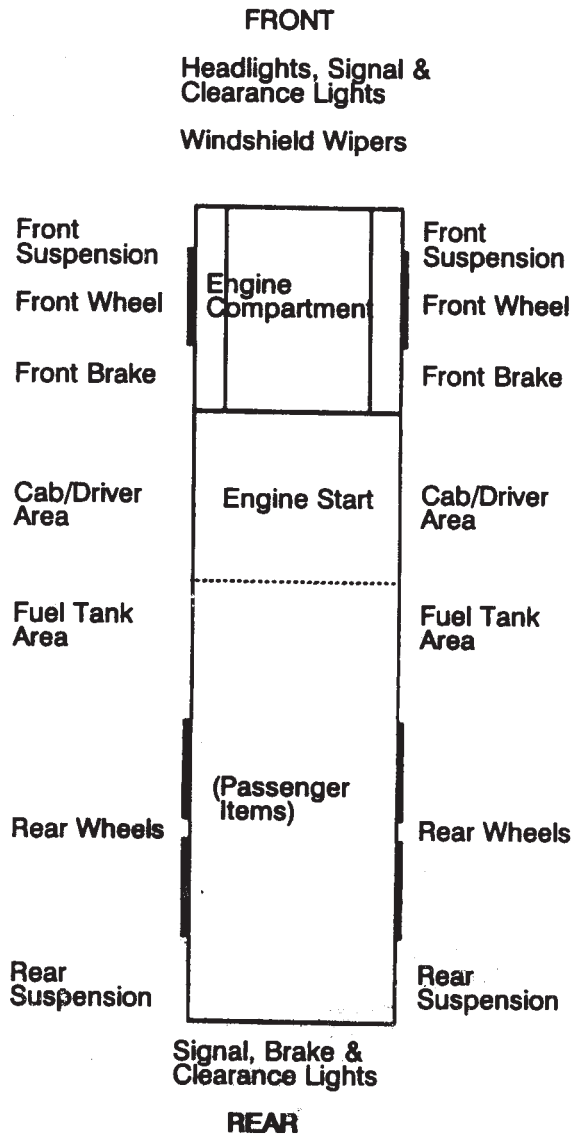


Figure 2.5--Straight Truck/School Bus

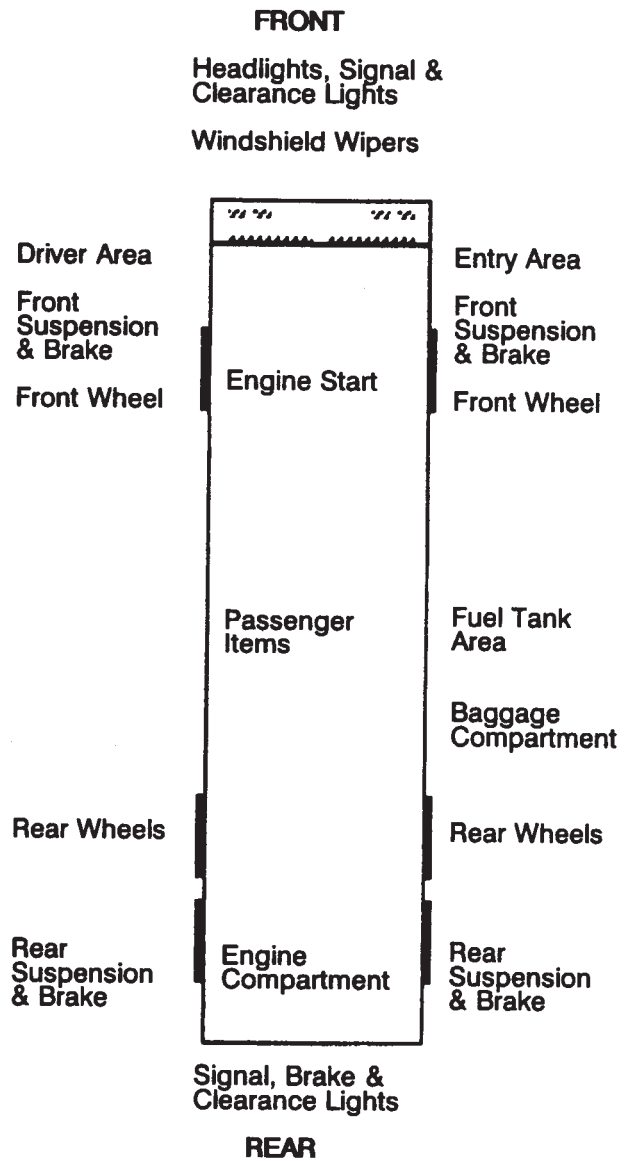
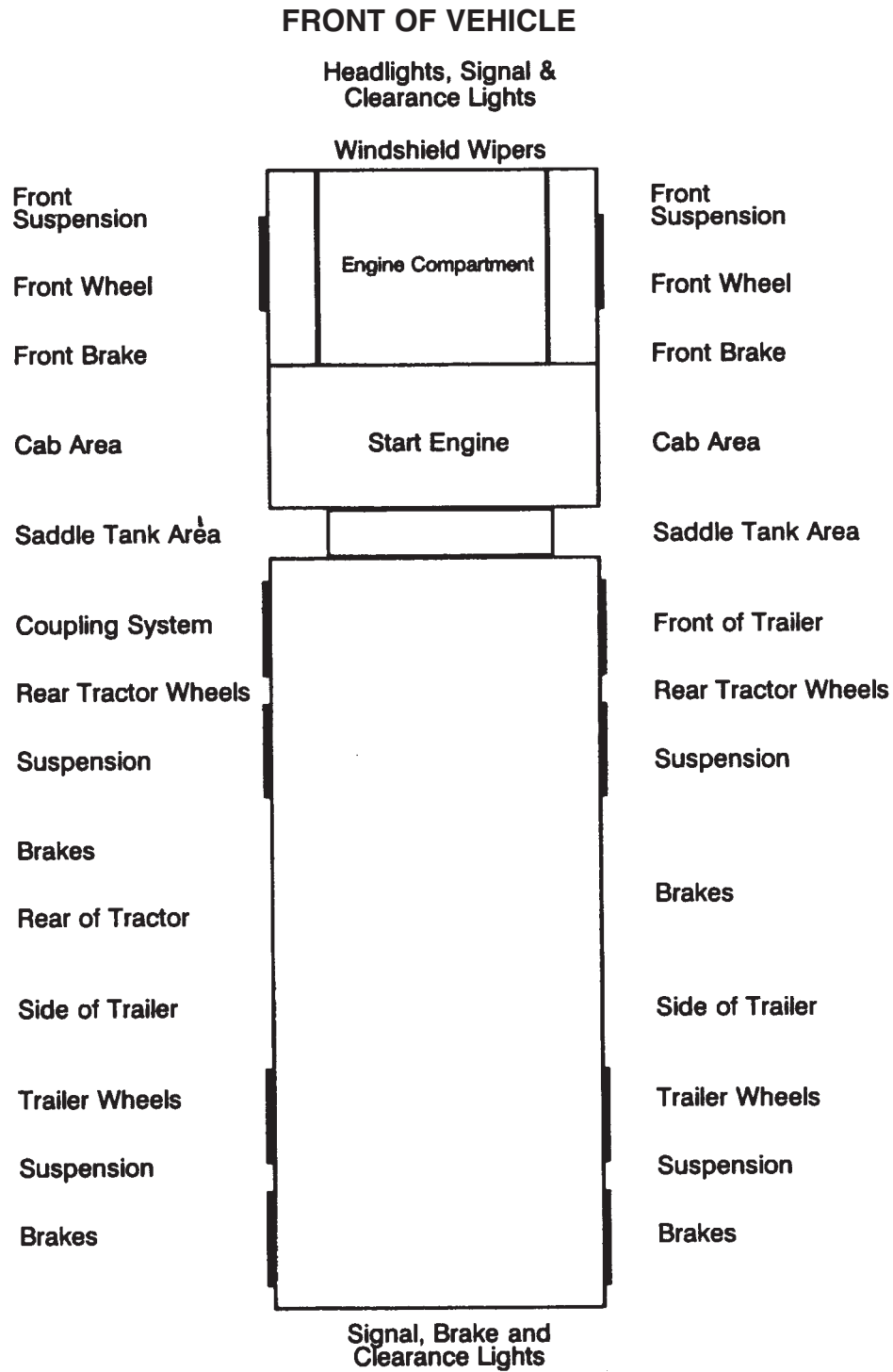


Figure 2.6--Coach/Transit Bus

**Safety Note:** Always put vehicle key in your pocket -- or someone might move the vehicle while you are checking underneath it.

**Vehicle Inspection Guide  
(Key Locations to Inspect)**



**REAR OF TRAILER**

*Figure 2.7 -- Tractor-Trailer*

**Safety Note:** If you are parked on a street, walk around so you are facing the oncoming traffic. Pay attention so you don't get run over.



## 2. Check Engine Compartment

**Check that the parking brakes are on and/or wheels chocked.** You may have to raise the hood, tilt the cab (secure loose things so they don't fall and break something), or open the engine compartment door. Check the following:

- Engine oil level.
- Coolant level in radiator; condition of hoses.
- Power steering fluid level; hose condition (if so equipped).
- Windshield washer fluid level.
- Battery fluid level, connections, and tie downs (battery may be located elsewhere).
- Automatic transmission fluid level (may require engine to be running).
- Check belts for tightness and excessive wear (alternator, water pump, air compressor)--learn how much "give" the belts should have when adjusted right, and check each one.
- Leaks in the engine compartment (fuel, coolant, oil, power steering fluid, hydraulic fluid, battery fluid).
- Cracked, worn electrical wiring insulation.

Lower and secure hood, cab, or engine compartment door.

## 3. Start Engine and Inspect Inside the Cab

### Get In and Start Engine

- Make sure parking brake is on.
- Put gearshift in neutral (or "park," if automatic).
- Start engine; listen for unusual noises.

### Look at the Gauges

- **Oil pressure.** Should come up to normal within seconds after engine is started.
- **Ammeter and/or voltmeter.** Should be in normal range(s).
- **Coolant temperature.** Should begin gradual rise to normal operating range.
- **Engine oil temperature.** Should begin gradual rise to normal operating range.

- **Warning lights and buzzers.** Oil, coolant, charging circuit warning lights should go out right away.

**Check Condition of Controls.** Check all of the following for looseness, sticking, damage, or improper setting:

- Steering wheel.
- Clutch.
- Accelerator ("gas pedal").
- Brake controls.
  - Foot brake.
  - Trailer brake (if vehicle has one).
  - Parking brake.
  - Retarder controls (if vehicle has them).
- Transmission controls.
- Interaxle differential lock (if vehicle has one).
- Horn(s).
- Windshield wiper/washer.
- Lights.
  - Headlights.
  - Dimmer switch.
  - Turn signal.
  - Four-way flashers.
  - Clearance, identification, marker light switch(es).

**Check Mirrors and Windshield.** Inspect mirrors and windshield for cracks, dirt, illegal stickers, or other obstructions to seeing. Clean and adjust as necessary.

### Check Emergency Equipment

- Check for safety equipment:
  - Spare electrical fuses (unless vehicle has circuit breakers).
  - Three red reflective triangles.
  - Properly charged and rated fire extinguisher.
- Check for optional items such as:
  - Tire chains (where winter conditions require them).
  - Tire changing equipment.
  - List of emergency phone numbers.
  - Accident reporting kit (packet).

## 4. Turn Off Engine and Check Lights

Make sure the parking brake is set, turn off the engine, and take the key with you. Turn on headlights (low beams) and four-way flashers, and get out.

## 5. Do Walk-around Inspection

- Go to front of vehicle and check that low beams are on and both of the four-way flashers are working.
- Push dimmer switch and check that high beams work.
- Turn off headlights and four-way, hazard warning flashers.
- Turn on parking, clearance, side-marker, and identification lights.
- Turn on right turn signal, and start walk-around inspection.

### General

- Walk around and inspect.
- Clean all lights, reflectors and glass as you go along.

### Left Front Side

- Driver's door glass should be clean.
- Door latches or locks work properly.
- Left front wheel.
  - Condition of wheel and rim--missing, bent, broken studs, clamps, lugs, any signs of misalignment.
  - Condition of tires--properly inflated, valve stem and cap OK, no serious cuts, bulges, tread wear.
  - Use wrench to test rust-streaked lug nuts, indicating looseness.
  - Hub oil level OK, no leaks.
- Left front suspension.
  - Condition of spring, spring hangers, shackles, u-bolts.
  - Shock absorber condition.
- Left front brake.
  - Condition of brake drum.
  - Condition of hoses.

### Front

- Condition of front axle.
- Condition of steering system.
  - No loose, worn, bent, damaged or missing parts.
  - Must grab steering mechanism to test for looseness.
- Condition of windshield.
  - Check for damage and clean if dirty.
  - Check windshield wiper arms for proper spring tension.
  - Check wiper blades for damage, "stiff" rubber, and

securement.

- Lights and reflectors.
  - Parking, clearance, and identification lights clean, operating, and proper color (amber at front).
  - Reflectors clean and proper color (amber at front).
- Right front turn signal light clean, operating, and proper color (amber or white on signals facing forward).

### Right Side

- Right front: check all items as done on left front.
- Primary and secondary safety cab locks engaged (if cabover-engine design).
- Right fuel tank(s).
  - Securely mounted, not damaged, or leaking.
  - Fuel crossover line secure.
  - Tank(s) contain enough fuel.
  - Cap(s) on and secure.
- Condition of visible parts.
  - Rear of engine--not leaking.
  - Transmission--not leaking.
  - Exhaust system--secure, not leaking, not touching wires, fuel, or air lines.
  - Frame and cross members--no bends, cracks.
  - Air lines and electrical wiring--secured against snagging, rubbing, wearing.
  - Spare tire carrier or rack not damaged (if so equipped).
  - Spare tire and/or wheel securely mounted in rack.
  - Spare tire and wheel adequate (proper size, properly inflated).
- Cargo securement (trucks).
  - Cargo properly blocked, braced, tied, chained, etc.
  - Header board adequate, secure if required.
  - Side boards, stakes strong enough, free of damage, properly set in place (if so equipped).
  - Canvas or tarp (if required) properly secured to prevent tearing, billowing, or blocking of mirrors.
  - If oversize, all required signs, flags, lamps, and reflectors must be safely and properly mounted and all required permits in driver's possession.
  - Curbside cargo compartment doors securely closed, latched/locked, required security seals in place.

### Right Rear

- Condition of wheels and rims--no missing, bent, broken spacers, studs, clamps, lugs.

- Condition of tires--properly inflated, valve stems and caps OK, no serious cuts, bulges, tread wear, tires not rubbing each other, and nothing stuck between them.
- Tires same type, e.g., not mixed radial and bias types.
- Tires evenly matched (same sizes).
- Wheel bearing/seals not leaking.
- Suspension.
  - Condition of spring(s), spring hangers, shackles, and u-bolts.
  - Axle secure.
  - Powered axle(s) not leaking lube (gear oil).
  - Condition of torque rod arms, bushings.
  - Condition of shock absorber(s).
  - If retractable axle equipped, check condition of lift mechanism. If air powered, check for leaks.
- Brakes.
  - Brake adjustment.
  - Condition of brake drums.
  - Condition of hoses--look for any wear due to rubbing.
- Lights and reflectors.
  - Side-marker lights clean, operating, and proper color (red at rear, others amber).
  - Side-marker reflectors clean and proper color (red at rear, others amber).

## Rear

- Lights and reflectors.
  - Rear clearance and identification lights clean, operating, and proper color (red at rear).
  - Reflectors clean and proper color (red at rear).
  - Taillights clean, operating, and proper color (red at rear).
  - Right rear turn signal operating, and proper color (red, yellow, or amber at rear).
- License plate(s) present, clean, and secured.
- Splash guards present, not damaged, properly fastened, not dragging on ground, or rubbing tires.
- Cargo secure (trucks).
  - Cargo properly blocked, braced, tied, chained, etc.
  - Tailboards up and properly secured.
  - End gates free of damage, properly secured in stake sockets.
  - Canvas or tarp (if required) properly secured to prevent tearing or billowing to block either the rearview mirrors or to cover rear lights.
  - If over-length, or over-width, make sure all signs and/or additional lights/flags are safely and properly mounted

and all required permits are in driver's possession.  
 -Rear doors securely closed, latched/locked.

## Left Side

- Check all items as done on right side, plus:
  - Battery(s) (if not mounted in engine compartment).
  - Battery(s) box securely mounted to vehicle.
  - Box has secure cover.
  - Battery(s) secured against movement.
  - Battery(s) not broken or leaking
  - Fluid in battery(s) at proper level (except maintenance-free type).
  - Cell caps present and securely tightened (except maintenance-free type).
  - Vents in cell caps free of foreign material (except maintenance-free type).

## 6. Check Signal Lights

### Get In and Turn Off Lights.

- Turn off all lights.
- Turn on stop lights (apply trailer hand brake or have a helper push on the brake pedal).
- Turn on left turn signal lights.

### Get Out and Check Lights.

- Left front turn signal light clean, operating and proper color (amber or white on signals facing the front).
- Left rear turn signal light and both stop lights clean, operating, and proper color (red, yellow, or amber).

### Get In Vehicle.

- Turn off lights not needed for driving.
- Check for all required papers, trip manifests, permits, etc.
- Secure all loose articles in cab (they might interfere with operation of the controls or hit you in a crash).
- Start the engine.

## 7. Start the Engine and Check Brake System

**Test for Hydraulic Leaks.** If the vehicle has hydraulic brakes, pump the brake pedal three times. Then apply firm pressure to the pedal and hold for five seconds. The pedal

should not move. If it does, there may be a leak or other problem. Get it fixed before driving.

**If the vehicle has air brakes, do the checks described in Sections 5 and 6 of this manual.**

### Test Parking Brake

- Fasten seat belt.
- Allow vehicle to move forward slowly.
- Apply parking brake.
- If it doesn't stop vehicle, it is faulty; get it fixed.

### Test Service Brake Stopping Action

- Go about five miles per hour.
- Push brake pedal firmly.
- "Pulling" to one side or the other can mean brake trouble.

Any unusual brake pedal "feel" or delayed stopping

- action can mean trouble.

This completes the pre-trip inspection.

**If you find anything unsafe during the pre-trip inspection, get it fixed. Federal and state laws forbid operating an unsafe vehicle.**

- **Inspection During a Trip**

### Check Vehicle Operation Regularly

**You should check:**

- Instruments.
- Air pressure gauge (if you have air brakes).
- Temperature gauges.
- Pressure gauges.
- Ammeter/voltmeter.
- Mirrors.
- Tires.
- Cargo, cargo covers.

If you see, hear, smell, or feel anything that might mean trouble, check it out.

### Safety Inspection

- Drivers of trucks and truck tractors when transporting cargo must inspect the securement of the cargo within the first 25 miles of a trip and every 150 miles or every three hours (whichever comes first) afterward.

### After-Trip Inspection & Report

You may have to make a written report each day on the condition of the vehicle(s) you drove. Report anything affecting safety or possibly leading to mechanical breakdown.

The vehicle inspection report tells the motor carrier about problems that may need fixing. Keep a copy of your report in the vehicle for one day. That way, the next driver can learn about any problems you have found.

### Test Your Knowledge

1. Name some things you should check on the front of your vehicle during the walk-around inspection.
2. What should wheel bearing seals be checked for?
3. How many red reflective triangles should you carry?
4. How do you test hydraulic brakes for leaks?
5. Can you bring the "vehicle inspection memory aide" with you to the test?
6. Why put the starter switch key in your pocket during the pre-trip inspection?

These questions may be on the test. If you can't answer them all, re-read about the seven-step inspection method.

## 2.2 BASIC CONTROL OF YOUR VEHICLE

To drive a vehicle safely, you must be able to control its speed and direction. Safe operation of a commercial vehicle requires skill in:

Accelerating.

- Steering.
- Shifting gears.
- Braking.
- Fasten your seat belt when on the road. Apply the parking brake when you leave your vehicle.

- **Accelerating**

Don't roll back when you start. You may hit someone behind you. Partly engage the clutch before you take your right foot off the brake. Put on the parking brake whenever necessary to keep from rolling back. Release the parking brake only when you have applied enough engine power to keep from rolling back. On a tractor-trailer equipped with a trailer brake hand valve, the hand valve can be applied to keep from rolling back.

Speed up smoothly and gradually so the vehicle does not jerk. Rough acceleration can cause mechanical damage. When pulling a trailer, rough acceleration can damage the coupling.

Speed up very gradually when traction is poor, as in rain or snow. If you use too much power, the drive wheels may spin. You could lose control. If the drive wheels begin to spin, take your foot off the accelerator.

- **Steering**

**Hold the Wheel Properly.** Hold the steering wheel firmly with both hands. Your hands should be on opposite sides of the wheel. If you hit a curb or a pothole chuckhole, the wheel could pull away from your hands unless you have a firm hold.

- **Backing Safely**

Because you cannot see everything behind your vehicle, backing is always dangerous. Avoid backing whenever you can. When you park, try to park so you will be able to pull forward when you leave. When you have to back, here are a few simple safety rules:

- Look at your path.
- Back slowly.
- Back and turn toward the driver's side whenever possible.
- Use a helper whenever possible.

These rules are discussed in turn below.

**Look At Your Path.** Look at your line of travel before you begin. Get out and walk around the vehicle. Check your clearance to the sides and overhead in and near the path your vehicle will take.

**Back Slowly.** Always back as slowly as possible. Use the lowest reverse gear. That way you can more easily correct any steering errors. You also can stop quickly if necessary.

**Back and Turn Toward the Driver's Side.** Back to the driver's side so you can see better. Backing toward the right side is very dangerous because you can't see as well. If you back and turn toward the driver's side, you can watch the rear of your vehicle by looking out the side window. Use driver-side backing even if it means going around the block to put your vehicle in this position. The added safety is worth it.

**Use a Helper.** Use a helper when you can. There are blind spots you can't see. That's why a helper is important.

The helper should stand near the back of your vehicle where you can see the helper. Before you begin backing, work out a set of hand signals that you both understand. Agree on a signal for "stop."

- **Backing with a Trailer**

**Backing With a Trailer.** When backing a car, straight truck, or bus, you turn the top of the steering wheel toward the direction you want to go. When backing a trailer, you turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction. Once the trailer starts to turn, you must turn the wheel the other way to follow the trailer.

Whenever you back with a trailer, try to position your vehicle so you can back in a straight line. If you must back on a curved path, back to the driver's side so you can see.

**Back Slowly.** This will let you make corrections before you get too far off course.

**Use the Mirrors.** The mirrors will help you see whether the trailer is drifting to one side or the other.

**Correct Drift Immediately.** As soon as you see the trailer getting off the proper path, correct it by turning the top of the steering wheel in the direction of the drift.

**Pull Forward.** When backing a trailer, make pull-ups to reposition your vehicle as needed.

Test Your Knowledge
1. Why should you back toward the driver's side? 2. What is a pull-up? 3. If stopped on a hill, how can you start moving without rolling back? 4. When backing, why is it important to use a helper? 5. What's the most important hand signal that you and the helper should agree on?
These questions may be on the test. If you can't answer them all, re-read 2.2 Basic Control of Your Vehicle.

---

## 2.3 SHIFTING GEARS

Correct shifting of gears is important. If you can't get your vehicle into the right gear while driving, you will have less control.

### ● Manual Transmissions

**Basic Method for Shifting Up.** Most heavy vehicles with manual transmissions require double clutching to change gears. This is the basic method:

1. Release accelerator, push in clutch and shift to neutral at the same time.
2. Release clutch.
3. Let engine and gears slow down to the rpm required for the next gear (this takes practice).
4. Push in clutch and shift to the higher gear at the same time.
5. Release clutch and press accelerator at the same time.

Shifting gears using double clutching requires practice. If you remain too long in neutral, you may have difficulty putting the vehicle into the next gear. If so, don't try to force it. Return to neutral, release clutch, increase engine speed to match road speed, and try again.

**Knowing When to Shift Up.** There are two ways of knowing when to shift:

**Use Engine Speed (rpm).** Study the driver's manual for your vehicle and learn the operating rpm range. Watch your tachometer, and shift up when your engine reaches the top of the range. Some newer vehicles use "progressive" shifting: the rpm at which you shift becomes higher as you move up in the gears. Find out what's right for the vehicle you will operate.

**Use Road Speed (mph).** Learn what speeds each gear is good for. Then, by using the speedometer, you'll know when to shift up.

With either method, you may learn to use engine sounds to know when to shift.

### Basic Procedures for Shifting Down

1. Release accelerator, push in clutch, and shift to neutral at the same time.
2. Release clutch.

3. Press accelerator, increase engine and gear speed to the rpm required in the lower gear.

4. Push in clutch and shift to lower gear at the same time.

5. Release clutch and press accelerator at the same time.

Downshifting, like upshifting, requires knowing when to shift. Use either the tachometer or the speedometer and downshift at the right rpm or road speed.

Special conditions where you should downshift are:

**Before Starting Down a Hill.** Slow down and shift down to a speed that you can control without using the brakes hard. Otherwise the brakes can overheat and lose their braking power. Downshift before starting down the hill. Make sure you are in a low enough gear, usually lower than the gear required to climb the same hill.

**Before entering a curve.** Slow down to a safe speed, and downshift to the right gear before entering the curve. This lets you use some power through the curve to help the vehicle be more stable while turning. It also lets you speed up as soon as you are out of the curve.

### ● Multi-speed Rear Axles and Auxiliary Transmissions

Multi-speed rear axles and auxiliary transmissions are used on many vehicles to provide extra gears. You usually control them by a selector knob or switch on the gearshift lever of the main transmission. There are many different shift patterns. Learn the right way to shift gears in the vehicle you will drive.

### ● Automatic Transmissions

Some vehicles have automatic transmissions. You can select a low range to get greater engine braking when going down grades. The lower ranges prevent the transmission from shifting up beyond the selected gear unless the governor (rpm) is exceeded. It is very important to use this braking effect when going down grades.

### ● Retarders

Some vehicles have "retarders." Retarders help slow a vehicle, reducing the need for using your brakes. They reduce brake wear and give you another way to slow down. There are many types of retarders (exhaust, engine, hydraulic, electric). All retarders can be turned on or off by the driver. On some the retarding power can be adjusted. When turned "on," retarders apply their braking power (to the drive wheels only) whenever you let up on the accelerator pedal all the way.



**Caution.** When your drive wheels have poor traction, the retarder may cause them to skid. Therefore, you should turn the retarder off whenever the road is wet, icy, or, snow covered.

### Test Your Knowledge

1. What are the two special conditions where you should downshift?
2. When should you downshift automatic transmissions?
3. Retarders keep you from skidding when the road is slippery. True or False?
4. What are the two ways to know when to shift?

These questions may be on the test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Section 2.3: Shifting Gears.

## 2.4 SEEING

To be a safe driver you need to know what's going on all around your vehicle. Not looking properly is a major cause of accidents.

### ● Seeing Ahead

All drivers look ahead; but many don't look far enough ahead.

**Importance of Looking Far Enough Ahead.** Because stopping or changing lanes can take a lot of distance, knowing what the traffic is doing on all sides of you is very important. You need to look well ahead to make sure you have room to make these moves safely.

**How Far Ahead to Look.** Most good drivers look 12 to 15 seconds ahead. That means looking ahead the distance you will travel in 12 to 15 seconds. At lower speeds, that's about one block. At highway speeds it's about a quarter of a mile. If you're not looking that far ahead, you may have to stop too quickly or make quick lane changes. Looking 12 to 15 seconds ahead doesn't mean not paying attention to things that are closer. Good drivers shift their attention back and forth, near and far.

**Look for Traffic.** Look for vehicles coming onto the highway, into your lane, or turning. Watch for brake lights from slowing vehicles. By seeing these things far enough ahead, you can change your speed or change lanes if necessary to avoid a problem.

**Look for Road Conditions.** Look for hills and curves--anything you'll have to slow or change lanes for. Pay attention to traffic signals and signs. If a light has been green for a long time, it will probably change before you get there. Start slowing down and be ready to stop. Traffic signs may alert you to road conditions where you may have to change

speed.

### ● Seeing to the Sides and Rear

It's important to know what's going on behind and to the sides. Check your mirrors regularly. Check more often in special situations.

**Mirror Adjustment.** Mirror adjustment should be checked prior to the start of any trip and can only be checked accurately when the trailers are straight. You should check and adjust each mirror as needed.

**Regular Checks.** You need to make regular checks of your mirrors to be aware of traffic and to check your vehicle.

**Traffic.** Check your mirrors for vehicles on either side and in back of you. In an emergency, you may need to know whether you can make a quick lane change. Use your mirrors to spot overtaking vehicles. There are "blind spots" that your mirrors cannot show you. Check your mirrors regularly to know where other vehicles are around you, and to see if they move into your blind spots.

**Check Your Vehicle.** Use the mirrors to keep an eye on your tires. It's one way to spot a tire fire. If you're carrying open cargo, you can use the mirrors to check it. Look for loose straps, ropes, or chains. Watch for a flapping or ballooning tarp.

**Special Situations.** Special situations require more than regular mirror checks. These are lane changes, turns, merges, and tight maneuvers.

**Lane Changes.** You need to check your mirror to make sure no one is alongside you or about to pass you. Check your mirrors:

- Before you change lanes to make sure there is enough room.
- After you have signaled to check that no one has moved into your blind spot.
- Right after you start the lane change to double-check that your path is clear.
- After you complete the lane change.

**Turns.** In turns, check your mirrors to make sure the rear of your vehicle will not hit anything.

**Merges.** When merging, use your mirrors to make sure the gap in traffic is large enough for you to enter safely.

**Tight Maneuvers.** Any time you are driving in close quarters check your mirrors often. Make sure you have enough clearance.

**How to Use Mirrors.** Use mirrors correctly by checking them quickly and understanding what you see.

**Checking Quickly.** When you use your mirrors while driving on the road, check quickly. Look back and forth between the mirrors and the road ahead. Don't focus on the mirrors for too long. Otherwise, you will travel quite a distance without knowing what's happening ahead.

**Understanding What You See.** Many large vehicles have curved (convex, "fisheye," "spot," "bugeye") mirrors that show a wider area than flat mirrors. This is often helpful. But everything appears smaller in a convex mirror than it would if you were looking at it directly. Things also seem farther away than they really are. It's important to realize this and to allow for it.

---

## 2.5 COMMUNICATING

Other drivers can't know what you are going to do until you tell them.

### ● Signal Your Intentions

Signaling what you intend to do is important for safety. Here are some general rules for signaling.

**Turns.** There are three good rules for using turn signals.

1. Signal early. Signal well before you turn. It is the best way to keep others from trying to pass you.
2. Signal continuously. You need both hands on the wheel to turn safely. Don't cancel the signal until you have completed the turn.
3. Cancel your signal. Don't forget to turn off your turn signal after you've turned if you don't have self-canceling signals.

**Lane Changes.** Put your turn signal on before changing lanes. Change lanes slowly and smoothly. That way a driver you didn't see may have a chance to honk his/her horn or avoid your vehicle.

**Slowing Down.** Warn drivers behind you when you see you'll need to slow down. A few light taps on the brake pedal (enough to flash the brake lights) should warn following drivers. Use the four-way emergency flashers for times when you are driving very slow or are stopped. Warn other drivers in any of the following situations:

**Trouble Ahead.** The size of your vehicle may make it hard for drivers behind you to see hazards ahead. If you see a

hazard that will require slowing down, warn the drivers behind by flashing your brake lights.

**Tight Turns.** Most car drivers don't know how slow you have to go to make a tight turn in a large vehicle. Give drivers behind you warning by braking early and slowing gradually.

**Stopping on the Road.** Truck and bus drivers sometimes stop in the road to unload cargo or passengers or to stop at a railroad crossing. Warn following drivers by flashing your brake lights. Don't stop suddenly.

**Driving Slowly.** Drivers often do not realize how fast they are catching up to a slow vehicle until they are very close. If you must drive slowly, alert following drivers by turning on your emergency flashers if it is legal. Laws regarding the use of flashers differ from one state to another. Check the laws of the states where you will drive.

**Don't Direct Traffic.** Some drivers try to help out others by signaling when it is safe to pass. You should not do this. You could cause an accident. You could be blamed and it could cost you many thousands of dollars.

### ● Communicating Your Presence

Other drivers may not notice your vehicle even when it's in plain sight. Let them know you're there to help prevent accidents.

**When Passing.** Whenever you are about to pass a vehicle, pedestrian, or bicyclist, assume they don't see you. They could suddenly move in front of you. When it is legal, tap the horn lightly or, at night, flash your lights from low to high beam and back. And drive carefully enough to avoid a crash even if they don't see or hear you.

**When It's Hard to See.** At dawn or dusk or in rain or snow, you need to make yourself easier to see. If you are having trouble seeing other vehicles, other drivers will have trouble seeing you. Turn on your lights. Use the headlights, not just the identification or clearance lights. Use the low beams; high beams can bother people in the daytime as at night.

**When Parked at the Side of the Road.** When you pull off the road and stop, be sure to turn on the four-way emergency flashers. This is important at night. Don't trust the tail-lights to give warning. Drivers have crashed into the rear of a parked vehicle because they thought it was moving normally.

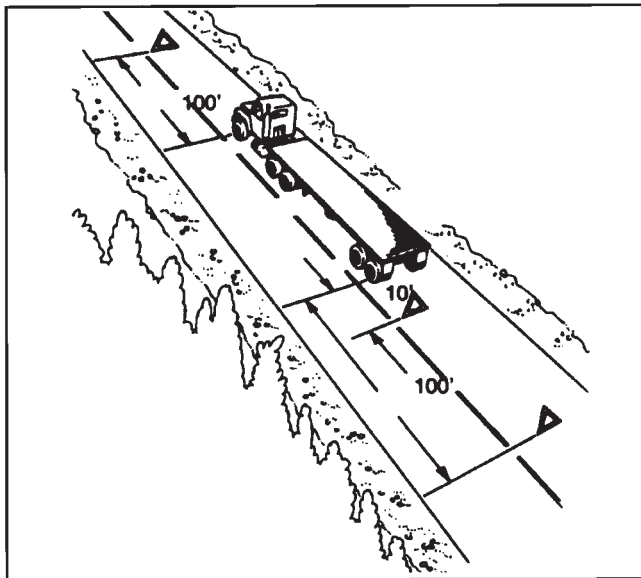
If you must stop on a road or the shoulder of any road, you must put out your emergency warning devices within ten minutes. Place your warning devices at the following locations:

- If you stop on a two-lane road carrying traffic in both directions or on an undivided highway, place warning devices within ten feet of the front or rear corners to mark the location of the vehicle and 100 feet behind and ahead of the vehicle, on the shoulder or in the lane you stopped in. (See Figure 2-8).
- Back beyond any hill, curve, or other obstruction that prevents other drivers from seeing the vehicle within 500 feet. (See Figure 2-9).
- If you must stop on or by a one-way or divided highway, place warning devices 10 feet, 100 feet, and 200 feet toward the approaching traffic. (See Figure 2-10).

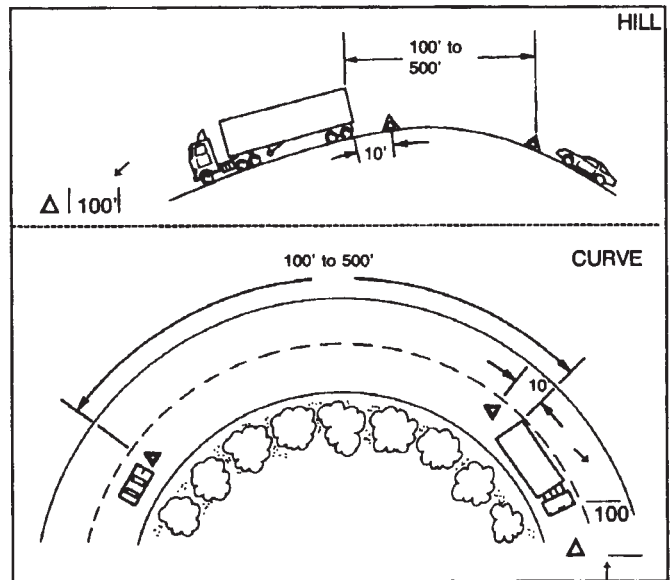
When putting out the triangles, hold them between yourself and the oncoming traffic for your own safety. (So other drivers can see you).

**Use Your Horn When Needed.** Your horn can let others know you're there. It can help to avoid a crash. Use your horn when needed. However, it can startle others and could be dangerous when used unnecessarily.

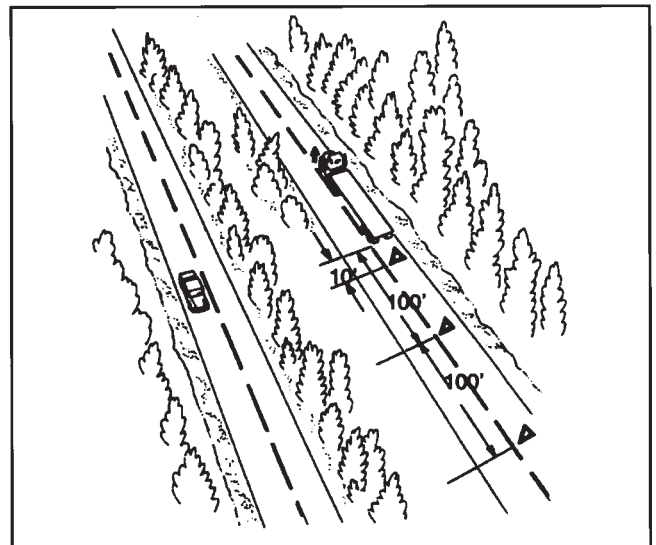
*Figure 2-8--Warning Device Placement Two Lane (traffic in both directions or Undivided Highway)*



*Figure 2-9--Warning Device Placement Obstructed View*



*Figure 2-10--Warning Device Placement One Way or Divided Highway*



---

## 2.6 CONTROLLING SPEED

Driving too fast is a major cause of fatal crashes. You must adjust your speed depending on driving conditions. These include traction, curves, visibility, traffic, and hills.

### • Speed and Stopping Distance

There are three things that add up to total stopping distance:

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{Perception Distance} \\ + \text{Reaction Distance} \\ + \text{Braking Distance} \\ \hline = \text{Total Stopping Distance} \end{array}$$

- **Perception Distance.** This is the distance your vehicle travels from the time your eyes see a hazard until your brain recognizes it. The perception time for an alert driver is about  $\frac{3}{4}$  second. At 55 mph, you travel 60 feet in  $\frac{3}{4}$  second.
- **Reaction Distance.** The distance traveled from the time your brain tells your foot to move from the accelerator until your foot is actually pushing the brake pedal. The average driver has a reaction time of  $\frac{3}{4}$  second. This accounts for an additional 60 feet traveled at 55 mph.
- **Braking Distance.** The distance it takes to stop once the brakes are put on. At 55 mph on dry pavement with good brakes it can take a heavy vehicle about 170 feet to stop. It takes about  $4\frac{1}{2}$  seconds.
- **Total Stopping Distance.** At 55 mph it will take about six seconds to stop and your vehicle will travel about the distance of a football field. ( $60 + 60 + 170 = 290$  feet).

**The Effect of Speed on Stopping Distance.** Whenever you double your speed, it takes about four times as much distance to stop and your vehicle will have four times the destructive power if it crashes. High speeds increase stopping distances greatly. By slowing down a little, you can gain a lot in reduced braking distance.

**The Effect of Vehicle Weight on Stopping Distance.** The heavier the vehicle, the more work the brakes must do to stop it and the more heat they absorb. However, the brakes, tires, springs, and shock absorbers on heavy vehicles are designed to work best when the vehicle is fully loaded. Empty trucks require greater stopping distances, because an empty vehicle has less traction. It can bounce and lock up its wheels, giving much poorer braking. This is not usually the case with buses.

### • Matching Speed to the Road Surface

You can't steer or brake a vehicle unless you have traction. Traction is friction between the tires and the road. There are some road conditions that reduce traction and call for lower speeds.

**Slippery Surfaces.** It will take longer to stop and it will be harder to turn without skidding when the road is slippery. You must drive slower to be able to stop in the same distance as on a dry road. Wet roads can double stopping distance. Reduce speed by about one third (e.g., slow from 55 to about 35 mph) on a wet road. On packed snow, reduce speed by a half, or more. If the surface is icy, reduce speed to a crawl and stop driving as soon as you can safely do so.

**Identifying Slippery Surfaces.** Sometimes it's hard to know if the road is slippery. Here are some signs of slippery roads.

**Shaded Areas.** Shady parts of the road will remain icy and slippery long after open areas have melted.

**Bridges.** When the temperature drops, bridges will freeze before the road will. Be especially careful when the temperature is close to 32 degrees F.

**Melting Ice.** Slight melting will make ice wet. Wet ice is much more slippery than ice that is not wet.

**Black Ice.** Black ice is a thin layer that is clear enough that you can see the road underneath it. It makes the road look wet. Any time the temperature is below freezing and the road looks wet, watch out for black ice.

**Vehicle Icing.** An easy way to check for ice is to open the window and feel the front of the mirror, mirror support, or antenna. If there's ice on these, the road surface is probably starting to ice up.

**Just After Rain Begins.** Right after it starts to rain, the water mixes with oil left on the road by vehicles. This makes the road very slippery. If the rain continues, it will wash the oil away.

**Hydroplaning.** In some weather, water or slush collects on the road. When this happens, your vehicle can hydroplane. It's like water skiing: the tires lose their contact with the road and have little or no traction. You may not be able to steer or brake. You can regain control by releasing the accelerator and pushing in the clutch. This will slow your vehicle and let the wheels turn freely. If the vehicle is hydroplaning, do not use the brakes to slow down. If the drive wheels start to skid, push in the clutch to let them turn freely.

It does not take a lot of water to cause hydroplaning. Hydroplaning can occur at speeds as low as 30 mph if there is a lot of water. Hydroplaning is more likely if tire pressure is low or the tread is worn. The grooves in a tire carry away the water; if they aren't deep, they don't work well. Be especially careful driving through puddles. The water is often deep enough to cause hydroplaning.

#### ● Speed and Curves

Drivers must adjust their speed for curves in the road. If you take a curve too fast, two things can happen. The tires can lose their traction and continue straight ahead, so you skid off the road. Or, the tires may keep their traction and the vehicle rolls over. Tests have shown that trucks with a high center of gravity can roll over at the posted speed limit for a curve.

Slow to a safe speed before you enter a curve. Braking in a curve is dangerous because it is easier to lock the wheels and cause a skid. Slow down as needed. Don't ever exceed the posted speed limit for the curve. Be in a gear that will let you accelerate slightly in the curve. This will help you keep control.

#### ● Speed and Distance Ahead

You should always be able to stop within the distance you can see ahead. Fog, rain or other conditions may require that you slow down to be able to stop in the distance you can see. At night, you can't see as far with low beams as you can with high beams. When you must use low beams, slow down.

#### ● Speed and Traffic Flow

When you're driving in heavy traffic, the safest speed is the speed of other vehicles. Vehicles going the same direction at the same speed are not likely to run into one another. Drive at the speed of the traffic, if you can without going at an illegal or unsafe speed. Keep a safe following distance.

The main reason drivers exceed speed limits is to save time. But anyone trying to drive faster than the speed of traffic will not be able to save much time. The risks involved are not worth it. If you go faster than the speed of other traffic, you'll have to keep passing other vehicles. This increases the chance of a crash; and it is more tiring. Fatigue increases the chance of a crash. Going with the flow of traffic is safer and easier.

#### ● Speed on Downgrades

Your vehicle's speed will increase on downgrades because of gravity. Your most important objective is to select and maintain a speed that is not too fast for the:

- Total weight of the vehicle and cargo.
- Length of the grade.
- Steepness of the grade.
- Road conditions.
- Weather.

If a speed limit is posted, or there is a sign indicating "Maximum Safe Speed," never exceed the speed shown. Also, look for and heed warning signs indicating the length and steepness of the grade. You must use the braking effect of the engine as the principal way of controlling your speed on downgrades. The braking effect of the engine is greatest when it is near the governed rpms and the transmission is in the lower gears. Save your brakes so you will be able to slow or stop as required by road and traffic conditions. Shift your transmission to a low gear before starting down the grade and use the proper braking techniques. Please read carefully the section on going down long steep downgrades safely in "Mountain Driving."

#### Test Your Knowledge

1. How far ahead does the manual say you should look?
2. What are two main things to look for ahead?
3. What's your most important way to see the sides and rear?
4. What does "communicating" mean in safe driving?
5. Where should your reflectors be placed when stopped on a divided highway?
6. What three things add up to total stopping distance?
7. If you go twice as fast, will your stopping distance increase by twice or four times?
8. Empty trucks have the best braking. True or False?
9. What is hydroplaning?
10. What is "black ice?"

These questions may be on the test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Sections 2.4, 2.5, and 2.6.

### 2.7 MANAGING SPACE

To be a safe driver, you need space all around your vehicle. When things go wrong, space gives you time to think and to take action.

To have space available when something goes wrong, you need to manage space. While this is true for all drivers, it is very important for large vehicles. They take up more space and they require more space for stopping and turning.



- **Space Ahead**

Of all the space around your vehicle, it is the area ahead of the vehicle--the space you're driving into--that is most important.

**The Need for Space Ahead.** You need space ahead in case you must suddenly stop. According to accident reports, the vehicle that trucks and buses most often run into is the one in front of them. The most frequent cause is following too closely. Remember, if the vehicle ahead of you is smaller than yours, it can probably stop faster than you can. You may crash if you are following too closely.

**How Much Space?** How much space should you keep in front of you? One good rule says you need at least one second for each 10 feet of vehicle length at speeds below 40 mph. At greater speeds, you must add one second for safety. For example, if you are driving a 40-foot vehicle, you should leave four seconds between you and the vehicle ahead. In a 60-foot rig, you'll need six seconds. Over 40 mph, you'd need five seconds for a 40-foot vehicle and seven seconds for a 60-foot vehicle.

To know how much space you have, wait until the vehicle ahead passes a shadow on the road, a pavement marking, or some other clear landmark. Then count off the seconds like this: "one thousand-and-one, one thousand-and-two" and so on, until you reach the same spot. Compare your count with the rule of one second for every ten feet of length. If you are driving a 40 foot truck and only counted up to two seconds, you're too close. Drop back a little and count again until you have four seconds of following distance (or five seconds, if you're going over 40 mph). After a little practice, you will know how far back you should be. Remember to add one second for speeds above 40 mph. Also remember that when the road is slippery, you need much more space to stop.

- **Space Behind**

You can't stop others from following you too closely. But there are things you can do to make it safer.

**Stay to the Right.** Heavy vehicles are often tailgated when they can't keep up with the speed of traffic. This often happens when you're going uphill. If a heavy load is slowing you down, stay in the right lane if you can. Going uphill, you should not pass another slow vehicle unless you can get around quickly and safely.

**Dealing With Tailgaters Safely.** In a large vehicle, it's often hard to see whether a vehicle is close behind you. You may be tailgated:

- When you are traveling slowly. Drivers trapped behind slow vehicles often follow closely.

- In bad weather. Many car drivers follow large vehicles closely during bad weather, especially when it is hard to see the road ahead.

If you find yourself being tailgated, here are some things you can do to reduce the chances of a crash:

- Avoid quick changes. If you have to slow down or turn, signal early, and reduce speed very gradually.
- Increase your following distance. Opening up room in front of you will help you to avoid having to make sudden speed or direction changes. It also makes it easier for the tailgater to get around you.
- Don't speed up. It's safer to be tailgated at a low speed than a high speed.
- Avoid tricks. Don't turn on your taillights or flash your brake lights. Follow the suggestions above.

- **Space to the Sides**

Commercial vehicles are often wide and take up most of a lane. Safe drivers will manage what little space they have. You can do this by keeping your vehicle centered in your lane, and avoid driving alongside others.

**Staying Centered in a Lane.** You need to keep your vehicle centered in the lane to keep safe clearance on either side. If your vehicle is wide, you have little room to spare.

**Traveling Next to Others.** There are two dangers in traveling alongside other vehicles:

- Another driver may change lanes suddenly and turn into you.
- You may be trapped when you need to change lanes.

Find an open spot where you aren't near other traffic. When traffic is heavy, it may be hard to find an open spot. If you must travel near other vehicles, try to keep as much space as possible between you and them. Also, drop back or pull forward so that you are sure the other driver can see you.

**Strong Winds.** Strong winds make it difficult to stay in your lane. The problem is usually worse for lighter vehicles. This problem can be especially bad coming out of tunnels. Don't drive alongside others if you can avoid it.

## • Space Overhead

- Hitting overhead objects is a danger. Make sure you always have overhead clearance.
- Don't assume that the heights posted at bridges and overpasses are correct. Re-paving or packed snow may have reduced the clearances since the heights were posted.
- The weight of a cargo van changes its height. An empty van is higher than a loaded one. That you got under a bridge when you were loaded does not mean that you can do it when you are empty.
- If you doubt you have safe space to pass under an object, go slowly. If you aren't sure you can make it, take another route. Warnings are often posted on low bridges or underpasses, but sometimes they are not.
- Some roads can cause a vehicle to tilt. There can be a problem clearing objects along the edge of the road, such as signs, trees, or bridge supports. Where this is a problem, drive a little closer to the center of the road.

Before you back into an area, get out and check for overhanging objects, such as trees, branches, or electric wires. It's easy to miss seeing them while you are backing. Also check for other hazards at the same time.

## • Space Below

Many drivers forget about the space under their vehicles. That space can be very small when a vehicle is heavily loaded. Railroad tracks can stick up several inches. This is often a problem on dirt roads and in unpaved yards where the surface around the tracks can wear away. Don't take a chance on getting hung up halfway across. Drainage channels across roads can cause the end of some vehicles to drag. Cross such depressions carefully.

## • Space for Turns

The space around a truck or bus is important in turns. Because of wide turning and offtracking, large vehicles can hit other vehicles or objects during turns.

**Right Turns.** Here are some rules to help prevent right-turn crashes:

- Turn slowly to give yourself and others more time to avoid problems.
- If you are driving a truck or bus that cannot make the

right turn without swinging into another lane, turn wide as you complete the turn, as shown in Figure 2-11.

- Keep the rear of your vehicle close to the curb. This will stop other drivers from passing you on the right.
- Don't turn wide to the left as you start the turn, as shown in Figure 2-12. A following driver may think you are turning left and try to pass you on the right. You may crash into the other vehicle as you complete your turn.
- If you must cross into the oncoming lane to make a turn, watch out for vehicles coming toward you. Give them room to go by or to stop. However, don't back up for them, because you might hit someone behind you.

Figure 2-11--Do This

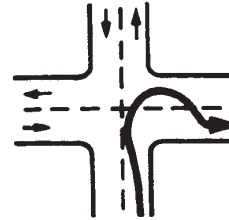
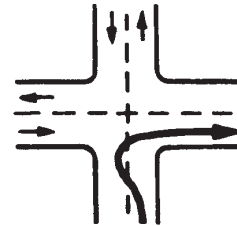


Figure 2-12--Don't Do This



**Left Turns.** On a left turn, make sure you have reached the center of the intersection before you start the left turn. If you turn too soon, the left side of your vehicle may hit another vehicle because of offtracking.

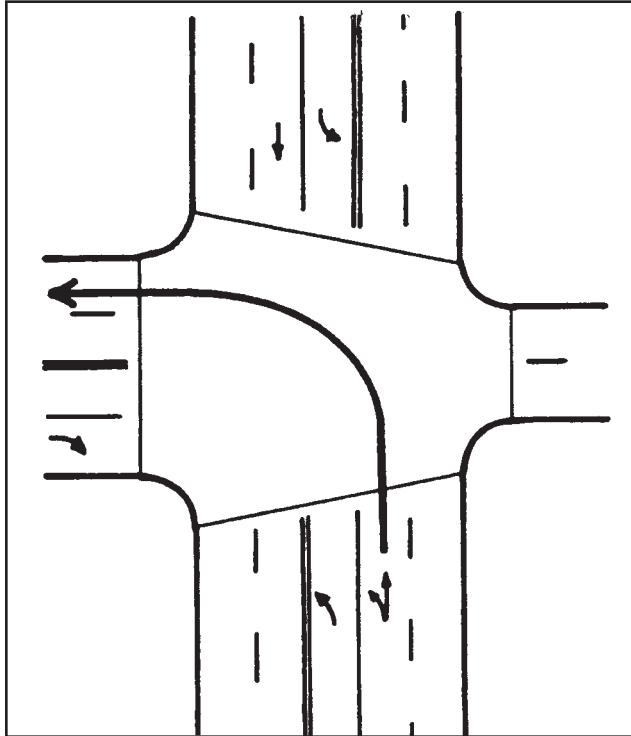
If there are two turning lanes, always take the right-hand turn lane, as shown in Figure 2-13. Don't start in the inside lane because you may have to swing right to make the turn. Drivers on your left can be more readily seen.

## • Space Needed to Cross or Enter Traffic

- Be aware of the size and weight of your vehicle when you cross or enter traffic. Here are some important things to keep in mind:
- Because of slow acceleration and the space large vehicles require, you may need a much larger gap to enter traffic than you would in a car.

- Acceleration varies with the load. Allow more room if your vehicle is heavily loaded.
- Before you start across a road, make sure you can get all the way across before traffic reaches you.

Figure 2-13--If there are two left turn lanes, use the right-hand lane.



### Test Your Knowledge

1. How do you find out how many seconds of following distance space you have?
2. If you are driving a 30-foot vehicle at 55 mph, how many seconds of following distance should you allow?
3. You should decrease your following distance if somebody is following you too closely. True or False?
4. If you swing wide to the left before turning right, another driver may try to pass you on the right. True or False?

These questions may be on the test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Section 2.7: Managing Space.

## 2.8 DRIVING AT NIGHT

You are at greater risk when you drive at night. Drivers can't see hazards as soon as in daylight, so they have less time to respond. Drivers caught by surprise are less able to avoid a crash.

### • It's More Dangerous

The problems of night driving involve the driver, the roadway, and the vehicle. We will discuss each of these factors.

### • Driver Factors

**Vision.** People can't see as sharply at night or in dim light. Also, their eyes need time to adjust to seeing in dim light. Most people have noticed this when walking into a dark movie theater.

**Glare.** Drivers can be blinded for a short time by bright light. It takes time to recover from this blindness. Older drivers are especially bothered by glare. Most people have been temporarily blinded by camera flash units or by the high beams of an oncoming vehicle. It can take several seconds to recover from glare. Even two seconds of glare blindness can be dangerous. A vehicle going 55 mph will travel more than half the distance of a football field during that time. Don't look directly at bright lights when driving. Look at the right side of the road. Watch the sidelines when someone coming toward you has very bright lights.

**Fatigue and Lack of Alertness.** Fatigue (being tired) and lack of alertness are bigger problems at night. The body's need for sleep is beyond a person's control. Most people are less alert at night, especially after midnight. This is particularly true if you have been driving for a long time. Drivers may not see hazards as soon or react as quickly, so the chance of a crash is greater. If you are sleepy, the only safe cure is to get off the road and get some sleep. If you don't, you risk your life and the lives of others.

### • Roadway Factors

**Poor Lighting.** In the daytime there is usually enough light to see well. This is not true at night. Some areas may have bright street lights, but many areas will have poor lighting. On most roads you will probably have to depend entirely on your headlights.

Less light means you will not be able to see hazards as well as in daytime. Road users who do not have lights are hard to see. There are many accidents at night involving pedestrians, joggers, bicyclists, and animals.

Even when there are lights, the road scene can be confusing. Traffic signals and hazards can be hard to see against a background of signs, shop windows, and other lights.

Drive slower when lighting is poor or confusing. Drive slowly enough to be sure you can stop in the distance you can see ahead.

**Drunk Drivers.** Drunk drivers and drivers under the influ-



ence of drugs are a hazard to themselves and to you. Be especially alert around the closing times for bars and taverns. Watch for drivers who have trouble staying in their lane or maintaining speed, stop without reason, or show other signs of being under the influence of alcohol or drugs.

#### ● Vehicle Factors

**Headlights.** At night your headlights will usually be the main source of light for you to see and for others to see you. You can't see nearly as much with your headlights as you can see in the daytime. With low beams you can see ahead about 250 feet and with high beams about 350-500 feet. You must adjust your speed to keep your stopping distance within your sight distance. This means going slow enough to be able to stop within the range of your headlights. Otherwise, by the time you see a hazard, you will not have time to stop.

Night driving can be more dangerous if you have problems with your headlights. Dirty headlights may give only half the light they should. This cuts down your ability to see, and makes it harder for others to see you. Make sure your lights are clean and working. Headlights can be out of adjustment. If they don't point in the right direction, they won't give you a good view and they can blind other drivers. Have a qualified person make sure they are adjusted properly.

**Other Lights.** In order for you to be seen easily, the following must be clean and working properly:

- Reflectors.
- Marker lights.
- Clearance lights.
- Taillights.
- Identification lights.

**Turn Signals and Brake Lights.** At night your turn signals and brake lights are even more important for telling other drivers what you intend to do. Make sure you have clean, working turn signals and stop lights.

**Windshield and Mirrors.** It is more important at night than in the daytime to have a clean windshield and clean mirrors. Bright lights at night can cause dirt on your windshield or mirrors to create a glare of its own, blocking your view. Most people have experienced driving toward the sun just as it has risen or is about to set and found that they can barely see through a windshield that seemed to look ok in the middle of the day. Clean your windshield on the inside and outside for safe driving at night.

#### ● Night Driving Procedures

**Pre-trip Procedures.** Make sure you are rested and alert. If you are drowsy, sleep before you drive! Even a nap can save your life or the lives of others. If you wear eye glasses, make sure they are clean and unscratched. Don't wear sun glasses at night. Do a complete pre-trip inspection of your vehicle. Pay attention to checking all lights and reflectors and cleaning those you can reach.

**Avoid Blinding Others.** Glare from your headlights can cause problems for drivers coming towards you. They can also bother drivers going in the same direction you are, when your lights shine in their rearview mirrors. Dim your lights before they cause glare for other drivers. Dim your lights within 500 feet of an oncoming vehicle and when following another vehicle within 500 feet.

**Avoid Glare From Oncoming Vehicles.** Do not look directly at lights of oncoming vehicles. Look slightly to the right at a right lane or edge marking, if available. If other drivers don't put their low beams on, don't try to "get back at them" by putting your own high beams on. This increases glare for oncoming drivers and increases the chance of a crash.

**Use High Beams When You Can.** Some drivers make the mistake of always using low beams. This seriously cuts down on their ability to see ahead. Use high beams when it is safe and legal to do so. Use them when you are not within 500 feet of an approaching vehicle. Also, don't let the inside of your cab get too bright. This makes it harder to see outside. Keep the interior light off and adjust your instrument lights as low as you can and still be able to read the gauges.

**If You Get Sleepy, Stop Driving at the Nearest Safe Place.** People often don't realize how close they are to falling asleep even when their eyelids are falling shut. If you can safely do so, look at yourself in a mirror. If you look sleepy, or you just feel sleepy, stop driving. You are in a very dangerous condition. The only safe cure is to sleep.

---

## 2.9 DRIVING IN FOG

The best advice for driving in fog is don't. It is preferable that you pull off the road into a rest area or truck stop until visibility is better. If you must drive, be sure to consider the following:

- Obey all fog-related warning signs.
- Slow before you enter fog.
- Turn on all your lights. Headlights should be on low beams.
- Be prepared for emergency stops.

---

## 2.10 DRIVING IN WINTER

Make sure your vehicle is ready before driving in winter weather. You should make a regular pre-trip inspection, paying extra attention to the following items:

### ● Vehicle Checks

**Coolant Level and Antifreeze Amount.** Make sure the cooling system is full and there is enough anti-freeze in the system to protect against freezing. This can be checked with a special coolant tester.

**Defrosting and Heating Equipment.** Make sure the defrosters work. They are needed for safe driving. Make sure the heater is working, and that you know how to operate it. If you use other heaters and expect to need them (e.g., mirror heaters, battery box heaters, fuel tank heaters), check their operation.

**Wipers and Washers.** Make sure the windshield wiper blades are in good condition. Make sure the wiper blades press against the window hard enough to wipe the windshield clean. Otherwise they may not sweep off snow properly. Make sure the windshield washer works and there is washing fluid contained in the washer reservoir.

Use windshield washer antifreeze to prevent freezing of the washer liquid. If you can't see well enough while driving (for example, if your wipers fail), stop safely and fix the problem.

**Tires.** Make sure you have enough tread on your tires. The drive tires must provide traction to push the rig over wet pavement and through snow. The steering tires must have traction to steer the vehicle. Enough tread is especially important in winter conditions. You must have at least 4/32 inch tread depth in every major groove on front tires and at least 2/32 inch on other tires. More would be better. Use a gauge to determine if you have enough tread for safe driving.

**Tire Chains.** You may find yourself in conditions where you can't drive without chains, even to get to a place of safety. Carry the right number of chains and extra cross links. Make sure they will fit your drive tires. Check the chains for broken hooks, worn or broken cross links, and bent or broken side chains. Learn how to put the chains on before you need to do it in snow and ice.

**Lights and Reflectors.** Make sure the lights and reflectors are clean. Lights and reflectors are especially important during bad weather. Check from time to time during bad weather to make sure they are clean and working right.

**Windows and Mirrors.** Remove any ice, snow, etc., from the windshield, windows, and mirrors before starting. Use a

windshield scraper, snow brush, and windshield defroster as necessary.

**Hand Holds, Steps, and Deck Plates.** Remove all ice and snow from hand holds, steps, and deck plates which you must use to enter the cab or to move about the vehicle. This will reduce the danger of slipping.

**Radiator Shutters and Winterfront.** Remove ice from the radiator shutters. Make sure the winterfront is not closed too tightly. If the shutters freeze shut or the winterfront is closed too much, the engine may overheat and stop.

**Exhaust System.** Exhaust system leaks are especially dangerous when cab ventilation may be poor (windows rolled up, etc.). Loose connections could permit poisonous carbon monoxide to leak into your vehicle. Carbon monoxide gas will cause you to be sleepy. In large enough amounts it can kill you. Check the exhaust system for loose parts and for sounds and signs of leaks.

### ● Driving

**Slippery Surfaces.** Drive slowly and smoothly on slippery roads. If it is very slippery, you shouldn't drive at all. Stop at the first safe place.

The following are some safety guidelines:

**Start Gently and Slowly.** When first starting, get the feel of the road. Don't hurry.

**Adjust Turning and Braking to Conditions.** Make turns as gentle as possible. Don't brake any harder than necessary, and don't use the engine brake or speed retarder. They can cause the driving wheels to skid on slippery surfaces.

**Adjust Speed to Conditions.** Don't pass slower vehicles unless necessary. Go slow and watch far enough ahead to keep a steady speed. Avoid having to slow down and speed up. Take curves at slower speeds and don't brake while in curves. Be aware that as the temperature rises to the point where ice begins to melt, the road becomes even more slippery. Slow down more.

**Adjust Space to Conditions.** Don't drive alongside other vehicles. Keep a longer following distance. When you see a traffic jam ahead, slow down or stop to wait for it to clear. Try hard to anticipate stops early and slow down gradually.

**Wet Brakes.** When driving in heavy rain or deep standing water, your brakes will get wet. Water in the brakes can cause the brakes to be weak, to apply unevenly, or to grab.

This can cause lack of braking power, wheel lockups, pulling to one side or the other, and jackknife if you pull a trailer.

Avoid driving through deep puddles or flowing water if possible. If not, you should:

- Slow down.
- Place transmission in a low gear.
- Gently put on the brakes. This presses linings against brake drums or discs and keeps mud, silt, sand, and water from getting in.
- Increase engine rpm and cross the water while keeping light pressure on the brakes.
- When out of the water, maintain light pressure on the brakes for a short distance to heat them up and dry them out.
- Make a test stop when safe to do so. Check behind to make sure no one is following, then apply the brakes to be sure they work right. If not, dry out further as described above. (CAUTION: Do not apply too much brake pressure and accelerator at the same time or you can overheat brake drums and linings.)

---

## 2.11 DRIVING IN VERY HOT WEATHER

Do a normal pre-trip inspection, but pay special attention to the following items:

- **Vehicle Checks**

**Tires.** Check the tire mounting and air pressure. Inspect the tires every two hours or every 100 miles when driving in very hot weather. Air pressure increases with temperature. Do not let air out or the pressure will be too low when the tires cool off. If a tire is too hot to touch, remain stopped until the tire cools off. Otherwise the tire may blow out or catch fire.

**Engine Oil.** The engine oil helps keep the engine cool, as well as lubricating it. Make sure there is enough engine oil. If you have an oil temperature gauge, make sure the temperature is within the proper range while you are driving.

**Engine Coolant.** Before starting out, make sure the engine cooling system has enough water and antifreeze according to the engine manufacturer's directions. Antifreeze helps the engine under hot conditions as well as cold conditions. When driving, check the water temperature or coolant temperature gauge from time to time. Make sure that it remains in the normal range. If the gauge goes above the highest safe temperature, there may be something wrong that could lead to engine failure and possibly fire. Stop driving as soon as safely possible and try to find out what is wrong.

Some vehicles have sight glasses, see-through coolant overflow containers or coolant recovery containers. These permit you to check the coolant level while the engine is hot. If the container is not part of the pressurized system, the cap can be safely removed and coolant added even when the engine is at operating temperature.

**Never remove the radiator cap or any part of the pressurized system until the system has cooled.** Steam and boiling water can spray under pressure and cause severe burns. If you can touch the radiator cap with your bare hand, it is probably cool enough to open.

If coolant has to be added to a system without a recovery tank or overflow tank, follow these steps:

- Shut engine off.
- Wait until engine has cooled.
- Protect hands (use gloves or a thick cloth).
- Turn radiator cap slowly to the first stop, which releases the pressure seal.
- Step back while pressure is released from cooling system.
- When all pressure has been released, press down on the cap and turn it further to remove it.
- Visually check level of coolant and add more coolant if necessary.
- Replace cap and turn all the way to the closed position.

**Engine Belts.** Learn how to check v-belt tightness on your vehicle by pressing on the belts. Loose belts will not turn the water pump and/or fan properly. This will result in overheating. Also, check belts for cracking or other signs of wear.

**Hoses.** Make sure coolant hoses are in good condition. A broken hose while driving can lead to engine failure and even fire.

- **Driving**

**Watch for Bleeding Tar.** Tar in the road pavement frequently rises to the surface in very hot weather. Spots where tar "bleeds" to the surface are very slippery.

**Go Slow Enough to Prevent Overheating.** High speeds create more heat for tires and the engine. In desert conditions the heat may build up to the point where it is dangerous. The heat will increase chances of tire failure or even fire, and engine failure.

### Test Your Knowledge

1. You should use low beams whenever you can. True or False?
2. What should you do before you drive if you are drowsy?
3. What effects can wet brakes cause? How can you avoid these problems?
4. You should let air out of hot tires so the pressure goes back to normal. True or False?
5. You can safely remove the radiator cap as long as the engine isn't overheated. True or False?

These questions may be on the test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Sections 2.8, 2.9, 2.10, and 2.11.

## 2.12 RAILROAD CROSSINGS

Railroad crossings are always dangerous. Every such crossing must be approached with the expectation that a train is coming.

- **Never Race a Train to a Crossing**

Never attempt to race a train to a crossing. It is extremely difficult to judge the speed of an approaching train.

- **Reduce Speed**

Speed must be reduced in accordance with your ability to see approaching trains in any direction, and speed must be held to a point which will permit you to stop short of the tracks in case a stop is necessary.

- **Don't Expect to Hear a Train**

Because of noise in the cab, you cannot expect to hear the train horn until the train is dangerously close to the crossing.

- **Don't Rely on Signals**

You should not rely solely upon the presence of warning signals, gates, or flagmen to warn of the approach of trains.

Double tracks require a double check. Remember that a train on one track may hide a train on the other track. Look both ways before crossing. After one train has cleared a crossing, be sure no other trains are near before starting across the tracks.

Yard areas and grade crossings in cities and towns are just as dangerous as rural grade crossings. Approach them with as much caution.

- **Stop Requirements**

A full stop is required at grade crossings whenever:

- The nature of the cargo makes a stop mandatory under state or federal regulations.
- Such a stop is otherwise required by law.

- **Crossing the Tracks**

Railroad crossings with steep approaches can cause your unit to hang up on the tracks.

Never permit traffic conditions to trap you in a position where you have to stop on the tracks. Be sure you can get all the way across the tracks before you start across.

Do not shift gears while crossing railroad tracks.

## 2.13 MOUNTAIN DRIVING

In mountain driving, gravity plays a major role. On any upgrade, gravity slows you down. The steeper the grade, the longer the grade, and/or the heavier the load--the more you will have to use lower gears to climb hills or mountains. In coming down, long steep downgrades, gravity causes the speed of your vehicle to increase. You must select an appropriate safe speed, then use a low gear, and use proper braking techniques. You should plan ahead and obtain information about any long steep grades along your planned route of travel. If possible, talk to other drivers who are familiar with the grades to find out what speeds are safe.

You must go slow enough so your brakes can hold you back without getting too hot. If the brakes become too hot, they may start to "fade." This means you have to apply them harder and harder to get the same stopping power. If you continue to use the brakes hard, they can keep fading until you cannot slow down or stop at all.

- **Select a "Safe" Speed**

Your most important consideration is to select a speed that is not too fast for the:

- Total weight of the vehicle and cargo.
- Length of the grade.
- Steepness of the grade.
- Road conditions.
- Weather.

If a speed limit is posted, or there is a sign indicating “Maximum Safe Speed,” never exceed the speed shown. Also, look for and heed warning signs indicating the length and steepness of the grade.

You must use the braking effect of the engine as the principal way of controlling your speed. The braking effect of the engine is greatest when it is near the governed rpms and the transmission is in the lower gears. Save your brakes so you will be able to slow or stop as required by road and traffic conditions.

- **Be in the Right Gear Before Starting Down the Grade**

Shift the transmission to a low gear before starting down the grade. Do not try to downshift after your speed has already built up. You will not be able to shift into a lower gear. You may not even be able to get back into any gear and all engine braking effect will be lost. Forcing an automatic transmission into a lower gear at high speed could damage the transmission and also lead to loss of all engine braking effect.

With older trucks, a rule for choosing gears is to use the same gear going down a hill that you would need to climb the hill. However, new trucks have low friction parts and streamlined shapes for fuel economy. They may also have more powerful engines. This means they can go up hills in higher gears and have less friction and air drag to hold them back going down hills. For that reason, drivers of modern trucks may have to use lower gears going down a hill than would be required to go up the hill. You should know what is right for your vehicle.

- **Brake Fading or Failure**

Brakes are designed so brake shoes or pads rub against the brake drum or disks to slow the vehicle. Braking creates heat, but brakes are designed to take a lot of heat. However, brakes can fade or fail from excessive heat caused by using them too much and not relying on the engine braking effect.

Brake fade is also affected by adjustment. To safely control a vehicle, every brake must do its share of the work. Brakes out of adjustment will stop doing their share before those that are in adjustment. The other brakes can then overheat and fade, and there will not be enough braking available to control the vehicle. Brakes can get out of adjustment quickly, especially when they are used a lot; also, brake linings wear faster when they are hot. Therefore, brake adjustment must be checked frequently.

- **Proper Braking Technique**

Remember: The use of brakes on a long and/or steep downgrade is only a supplement to the braking effect of the engine. Once the vehicle is in the proper low gear, the fol-

lowing is a proper braking technique:

1. Apply the brakes just hard enough to feel a definite slowdown.
2. When your speed has been reduced to approximately five mph below your “safe” speed, release the brakes. [This brake application should last for about three seconds.]
3. When your speed has increased to your “safe” speed, repeat steps 1 and 2.

For example, if your “safe” speed is 40 mph, you would not apply the brakes until your speed reaches 40 mph. You now apply the brakes hard enough to gradually reduce your speed to 35 mph and then release the brakes. Repeat this as often as necessary until you have reached the end of the downgrade.

Escape ramps have been built on many steep mountain downgrades. Escape ramps are made to stop runaway vehicles safely without injuring drivers and passengers. Escape ramps use a long bed of loose soft material to slow a runaway vehicle, sometimes in combination with an upgrade.

Know escape ramp locations on your route. Signs show drivers where ramps are located. Escape ramps save lives, equipment, and cargo. Use them if you lose your brakes.

---

## 2.14 SEEING HAZARDS

- **Importance of Seeing Hazards**

**What Is a Hazard?** A hazard is any road condition or other road user (driver, bicyclist, pedestrian) that is a possible danger. For example, a car in front of you is headed towards the freeway exit, but his brake lights come on and he begins braking hard. This could mean that the driver is uncertain about taking the offramp. He might suddenly return to the highway. This car is a hazard. If the driver of the car cuts in front of you, it is no longer just a hazard; it is an emergency.

**Seeing Hazards Lets You Be Prepared.** You will have more time to act if you see hazards before they become emergencies. In the example above, you might make a lane change or slow down to prevent a crash if the car suddenly cuts in front of you. Seeing this hazard gives you time to check your mirrors and signal a lane change. Being prepared reduces the danger. A driver who did not see the hazard until the slow car pulled back on the highway in front of him would have to do something very suddenly. Sudden braking or a quick lane change is much more likely to lead to a crash.



**Learning to See Hazards.** There are often clues that will help you see hazards. The more you drive, the better you can get at seeing hazards. This section will talk about hazards that you should be aware of.

- **Hazardous Roads**

Slow down and be very careful if you see any of the following road hazards:

**Work Zones.** When people are working on the road, it is a hazard. There may be narrower lanes, sharp turns, or uneven surfaces. Other drivers are often distracted and drive unsafely. Workers and construction vehicles may get in the way. Drive slowly and carefully near work zones. Use your four-way flashers or brake lights to warn drivers behind you.

**Drop Off.** Sometimes the pavement drops off sharply near the edge of the road. Driving too near the edge can tilt your vehicle toward the side of the road. This can cause the top of your vehicle to hit roadside objects (signs, tree limbs). Also, it can be hard to steer as you cross the drop off, going off the road, or coming back on.

**Foreign Objects.** Things that have fallen on the road can be hazards. They can be a danger to your tires and wheel rims. They can damage electrical and brake lines. They can be caught between dual tires and cause severe damage. Some obstacles which appear to be harmless can be very dangerous. For example, cardboard boxes may be empty, but they may also contain some solid or heavy material capable of causing damage. The same is true of paper and cloth sacks. It is important to remain alert for objects of all sorts, so you can see them early enough to avoid them without making sudden, unsafe moves.

**Offramps/Onramps.** Freeway and turnpike exits can be particularly dangerous for commercial vehicles. Offramps and onramps often have speed limit signs posted. Remember, these speeds may be safe for automobiles, **but may not be safe for larger vehicles or heavily loaded vehicles.** Exits which go downhill and turn at the same time can be especially dangerous. The downgrade makes it difficult to reduce speed. Braking and turning at the same time can be a dangerous practice. Make sure you are going slow enough before you get on the curved part of an offramp or onramp.

- **Drivers Who Are Hazards**

In order to protect yourself and others, you must know when other drivers may do something hazardous. Some clues to this type of hazard are discussed below:

**Blocked Vision.** People who can't see others are a very dangerous hazard. Be alert for drivers whose vision is

blocked. Vans, loaded station wagons, and cars with the rear window blocked are examples. Rental trucks should be watched carefully. Their drivers are often not used to the limited vision they have to the sides and rear of the truck. In winter, vehicles with frosted, ice-covered, or snow-covered windows are hazards.

Vehicles may be partly hidden by blind intersections or alleys. If you only can see the rear or front end of a vehicle but not the driver, then he or she can't see you. Be alert because he/she may back out or enter into your lane. Always be prepared to stop.

Delivery trucks can present a hazard. The driver's vision is often blocked by packages, or vehicle doors. Drivers of step vans, postal vehicles, and local delivery vehicles often are in a hurry and may suddenly step out of their vehicle or drive their vehicle into the traffic lane.

Parked vehicles can be hazards, when the people start to get out. Or, they may suddenly start up and drive into your way. Watch for movement inside the vehicle or movement of the vehicle itself that shows people are inside. Watch for brake lights or backup lights, exhaust, and other clues that a driver is about to move.

Be careful of a stopped bus. Passengers may cross in front of or behind the bus, and they often can't see you.

Pedestrians and bicyclists can also be hazards. Walkers, joggers, and bicyclists may be on the road with their back to the traffic, so they can't see you. Sometimes, they wear portable stereos with head sets, so they can't hear you either. This can be dangerous. On rainy days, pedestrians may not see you because of hats or umbrellas. They may be hurrying to get out of the rain and may not pay attention to the traffic.

**Distractions.** People who are distracted are hazards. Watch for where they are looking. If they are looking elsewhere, they can't see you. But be alert even when they are looking at you. They may believe that they have the right of way.

**Children.** Children tend to act quickly without checking traffic. Children playing with one another may not look for traffic and are a serious hazard.

**Talkers.** Drivers or pedestrians talking to one another may not be paying close attention to the traffic.

**Workers.** People working on or near the roadway are a hazard clue. The work creates a distraction for other drivers and the workers themselves may not see you.

**Ice Cream Truck.** Someone selling ice cream is a hazard clue. Children may be nearby and may not see you.

**Disabled Vehicle.** Drivers changing a tire or fixing an engine often do not pay attention to the danger that roadway traffic is to them. They are often careless. Jacked up wheels or raised hoods are hazard clues.

**Accidents.** Accidents are particularly hazardous. People involved in the accident may not look for traffic. Passing drivers tend to look at the accident. People often run across the road without looking. Vehicles may slow or stop suddenly.

**Shoppers.** People in and around shopping areas are often not watching traffic because they are looking for stores or looking into store windows.

**Confused Drivers.** Confused drivers often change direction suddenly or stop without warning. Confusion is common near freeway or turnpike interchanges and major intersections. Tourists unfamiliar with the area can be very hazardous. Clues to tourists include cartop luggage and out-of-state license plates. Unexpected actions (stopping in the middle of a block, changing lanes for no apparent reason, backup lights suddenly going on) are clues to confusion. Hesitation is another clue, including driving very slowly, using brakes often, or stopping in the middle of an intersection. You may also see drivers who are looking at street signs, maps, and house numbers. These drivers may not be paying attention to you.

**Slow Drivers.** Motorists who fail to maintain normal speed are hazards. Seeing slow moving vehicles early can prevent a crash. Some vehicles, by their nature, are slow and seeing them is a hazard clue (mopeds, farm machinery, construction machinery, tractors, etc.). Some of these will have the “slow moving vehicle” symbol to warn you. This is a red triangle with an orange center. Watch for it.

Drivers signaling a turn may be a hazard. Drivers signaling a turn may slow more than expected or stop. If they are making a tight turn into an alley or driveway, they may go very slow. If they are blocked by pedestrians or other vehicles, they may have to stop on the roadway. Vehicles turning left may have to stop for oncoming vehicles.

**Drivers In a Hurry.** Drivers may feel your commercial vehicle is preventing them from getting where they want to go on time. Such drivers may pass you without a safe gap in the oncoming traffic, cutting too close in front of you. Drivers

entering the road may pull in front of you in order to avoid being stuck behind you, causing you to brake. Be aware of this and watch for drivers who are in a hurry.

**Impaired Drivers.** Drivers who are sleepy, have had too much to drink, on drugs, or who are ill are hazards. Some clues to these drivers are:

- Weaving across the road or drifting from one side to another.
- Leaving the road dropping right wheels onto the shoulder, or bumping across a curb in a turn.
- Stopping at the wrong time stopping at a green light, or waiting for too long at a stop.
- Open window in cold weather.
- Speeds up or slows down suddenly, driving too fast or too slow.

Be alert for drunk drivers and sleepy drivers late at night.

**Driver Body Movement As a Clue.** Drivers look in the direction they are going to turn. You may sometimes get a clue from a driver's head and body movements that a driver may be going to make a turn even though the turn signals aren't on. Drivers making over-the-shoulder checks may be going to change lanes. These clues are most easily seen in motorcyclists and bicyclists. Watch other road users and try to tell whether they might do something hazardous.

**Conflicts.** You are in conflict when you have to change speed and/or direction to avoid hitting someone. Conflicts occur at intersections where vehicles meet, at merges (such as turnpike on-ramps), and where there are needed lane changes (such as the end of a lane, forcing a move to another lane of traffic). Other situations include slow moving or stalled traffic in a traffic lane, and accident scenes. Watch for other drivers who are in conflict because they are a hazard to you. When they react to this conflict, they may do something that will put them in conflict with you.

#### ● Always Have a Plan

You should always be looking for hazards. Continue to learn to see hazards on the road. However, don't forget why you are looking for the hazards: they may turn into **emergencies**. You look for the hazards in order to have time to plan a way out of any emergency. When you see a hazard, think about the emergencies that could develop and figure out what you would do. Always be prepared to take action based on your plans. In this way, you will be a prepared, defensive driver who will improve not only your own safety but the safety of all road users.



### Test Your Knowledge

1. What factors determine your selection of a “safe” speed when going down a long, steep downgrade?
2. Why should you be in the proper gear before starting down a hill?
3. Describe the proper braking technique when going down a long, steep downgrade.
4. What is a hazard?
5. Why make emergency plans when you see a hazard?

These questions may be on the test. If you can’t answer them all, re-read Sections 2.12, 2.13, and 2.14.

## 2.15 EMERGENCIES

**Traffic** emergencies occur when two vehicles are about to collide. **Vehicle** emergencies occur when tires, brakes, or other critical parts fail. Following the safety practices in this manual can help prevent emergencies. But if an emergency does happen, your chances of avoiding a crash depend upon how well you take action. Actions you can take are discussed below.

### ● Steering to Avoid a Crash

Stopping is not always the safest thing to do in an emergency. When you don’t have enough room to stop, you may have to steer away from what’s ahead. Remember, you can almost always turn to miss an obstacle more quickly than you can stop. However, top-heavy vehicles and tractors with multiple trailers may flip over.

**Keep Both Hands on the Steering Wheel.** In order to turn quickly, you must have a firm grip on the steering wheel with both hands. The best way to have both hands on the wheel, if there is an emergency, is to keep them there all the time.

**How to Turn Quickly and Safely.** A quick turn can be made safely, if it’s done the right way. Here are some points that safe drivers use:

- Do not apply the brake while you are turning. It’s very easy to lock your wheels while turning. If that happens, you may skid out of control.
- Do not turn any more than needed to clear whatever is in your way. The more sharply you turn, the greater the chances of a skid or rollover.
- Be prepared to “countersteer,” that is, to turn the wheel back in the other direction, once you’ve passed whatever was in your path. Unless you are prepared to countersteer, you won’t be able to do it

quickly enough. You should think of emergency steering and countersteering as two parts of one driving action.

**Where to Steer.** If an oncoming driver has drifted into your lane, a move to your right is best. If that driver realizes what has happened, the natural response will be to return to his or her own lane.

If something is blocking your path, the best direction to steer will depend on the situation.

- If you have been using your mirrors, you’ll know which lane is empty and can be safely used.
- If the shoulder is clear, going right may be best. No one is likely to be driving on the shoulder but someone may be passing you on the left. You will know if you have been using your mirrors.
- If you are blocked on both sides, a move to the right may be best. At least you won’t force anyone into an opposing traffic lane and a possible head-on collision.

**Leaving the Road.** In some emergencies, you may have to drive off the road. It may be less risky than facing a collision with another vehicle.

Most shoulders are strong enough to support the weight of a large vehicle and, therefore, offer an available escape route. Here are some guidelines, if you do leave the road.

**Avoid Braking.** If possible, avoid using the brakes until your speed has dropped to about 20 mph. Then brake very gently to avoid skidding on a loose surface.

**Keep One Set of Wheels on the Pavement If Possible.** This helps to maintain control.

**Stay on the Shoulder.** If the shoulder is clear, stay on it until your vehicle has come to a stop. Signal and check your mirrors before pulling back onto the road.

**Returning to the Road.** If you are forced to return to the road before you can stop, use the following procedure:

Hold the wheel tightly and turn sharply enough to get right back on the road safely. Don’t try to edge gradually back on the road. If you do, your tires might grab unexpectedly and you could lose control.

When both front tires are on the paved surface, **countersteer** immediately. The two turns should be made as a single “steer-countersteer” move.

- **How to Stop Quickly and Safely**

If somebody suddenly pulls out in front of you, your natural response is to hit the brakes. This is a good response if there's enough distance to stop and you use the brakes correctly.

You should brake in a way that will keep your vehicle in a straight line and allow you to turn if it becomes necessary. You can use the "controlled braking" method or the "stab braking" method.

**Controlled Braking.** With this method, you apply the brakes as hard as you can without locking the wheels. Keep steering wheel movements very small while doing this. If you need to make a larger steering adjustment or if the wheels lock, release the brakes. Reapply the brakes as soon as you can.

### **Stab Braking**

- Apply your brakes all the way.
- Release brakes when wheels lock up.
- As soon as the wheels start rolling, apply the brakes fully again. (It can take up to one second for the wheels to start rolling after you release the brakes. If you re-apply the brakes before the wheels start rolling, the vehicle won't straighten out.)

**Don't Jam on the Brakes.** Emergency braking does not mean pushing down on the brake pedal as hard as you can. That will only keep the wheels locked up and cause a skid. If the wheels are skidding, you cannot control the vehicle.

**Note: If you drive a vehicle with anti-lock brakes, you should read and follow the directions found in the Owners Manual for stopping quickly.**

Brakes kept in good condition rarely fail. Most **hydraulic** brake failures occur for one of two reasons: (Air brakes are discussed in Section 5.)

- Loss of hydraulic pressure.
- Brake fade on long hills.

**Loss of Hydraulic Pressure.** When the system won't build up pressure, the brake pedal will feel spongy or go to the floor. Here are some things you can do:

**Downshift.** Putting the vehicle into a lower gear will help to slow the vehicle.

**Pump the Brakes.** Sometimes pumping the brake pedal will generate enough hydraulic pressure to stop the vehicle.

**Use the Parking Brake.** The parking or emergency brake is separate from the hydraulic brake system. Therefore, it can be used to slow the vehicle. However, be sure to press the release button or pull the release lever at the same time you use the emergency brake so you can adjust the brake pressure and keep the wheels from locking up.

**Find an Escape Route.** While slowing the vehicle, look for an escape route--an open field, side street, or escape ramp. Turning uphill is a good way to slow and stop the vehicle. Make sure the vehicle does not start rolling backward after you stop. Put it in low gear, apply the parking brake, and, if necessary, roll back into some obstacle that will stop the vehicle.

**Brake Failure on Downgrades.** Going slow enough and braking properly will almost always prevent brake failure on long downgrades. Once the brakes have failed, however, you are going to have to look outside your vehicle for something to stop it.

Your best hope is an **escape ramp**. If there is one, there will be signs telling you about it. Use it. Ramps are usually located a few miles from the top of the downgrade. Every year, hundreds of drivers avoid injury to themselves or damage to their vehicles by using escape ramps. Some escape ramps use soft gravel that resists the motion of the vehicle and brings it to a stop. Others turn uphill, using the hill to stop the vehicle and soft gravel to hold it in place.

Any driver who loses brakes going downhill should use an escape ramp if it's available. If you don't use it, your chances of having a serious crash may be much greater.

If no escape ramp is available, take the least hazardous escape route you can -- such as an open field or a side road that flattens out or turns uphill. Make the move as soon as you know your brakes don't work. The longer you wait, the faster the vehicle will go and the harder it will be to stop.

- **Tire Failure**

**Recognize Tire Failure.** Quickly knowing you have a tire failure will let you have more time to react. Having just a few seconds to remember what it is you're supposed to do can help you. The major signs of tire failure are:

**Sound.** The loud "bang" of a blowout is an easily recognized sign. Because it can take a few seconds for your vehicle to react, you might think it was some other vehicle. But any time you hear a tire blow, you'd be safest to assume it was yours.

**Vibration.** If the vehicle thumps or vibrates heavily, it may be a sign that one of the tires has gone flat. With a rear tire, that may be the only sign you get.

**Feel.** If the steering feels “heavy,” it is probably a sign that one of the front tires has failed. Sometimes, failure of a rear tire will cause the vehicle to slide back and forth or “fishtail.” However, dual rear tires usually prevent this.

Any of these signs is a warning of possible tire failure. You should do the following things:

**Hold the Steering Wheel Firmly.** If a front tire fails, it can twist the steering wheel out of your hand. The only way to prevent this is to keep a firm grip on the steering wheel with both hands at all times.

**Stay Off the Brake.** It’s natural to want to brake in an emergency. However, braking when a tire has failed could cause loss of control. Unless you’re about to run into something, stay off the brake until the vehicle has slowed down. Then brake very gently, pull off the road, and stop.

**Check the Tires.** After you’ve come to a stop, get out and check all the tires. Do this even if the vehicle seems to be handling all right. If one of your dual tires goes, the only way you may know it is by getting out and looking at it.

---

## 2.16 SKID CONTROL AND RECOVERY

A skid happens whenever the tires lose their grip on the road. This is caused in one of four ways:

**Over-braking.** Braking too hard and locking up the wheels. Skids also can occur when using the speed retarder when the road is slippery.

**Over-steering.** Turning the wheels more sharply than the vehicle can turn.

**Over-acceleration.** Supplying too much power to the drive wheels, causing them to spin.

**Driving Too Fast.** Most serious skids result from driving too fast for road conditions. Drivers who adjust their driving to conditions don’t over-accelerate and don’t have to over-brake or over-steer from too much speed.

### • Drive-Wheel Skids

By far the most common skid is one in which the rear wheels lose traction through excessive braking or acceleration. Skids caused by acceleration usually happen on ice or snow. They can be easily stopped by taking your foot off the accelerator. (If it is very slippery, push the clutch in.

Otherwise, the engine can keep the wheels from rolling freely and regaining traction.)

Rear wheel braking skids occur when the rear drive wheels lock. Because locked wheels have less traction than rolling wheels, the rear wheels usually slide sideways in an attempt to “catch up” with the front wheels. In a bus or straight truck, the vehicle will slide sideways in a “spin out.” With vehicles towing trailers, a drive-wheel skid can let the trailer push the towing vehicle sideways, causing a sudden jackknife.

### • Correcting a Drive-Wheel Braking Skid

Do the following to correct a drive-wheel braking skid:

**Stop Braking.** This will let the rear wheels roll again, and keep the rear wheels from sliding any further. If on ice, push in the clutch to let the wheels turn freely.

**Turn Quickly.** When a vehicle begins to slide sideways, **quickly** steer in the direction you want the vehicle to go down the road. You must turn the wheel quickly.

**Countersteer.** As a vehicle turns back on course, it has a tendency to keep right on turning. Unless you turn the steering wheel quickly the other way, you may find yourself skidding in the opposite direction.

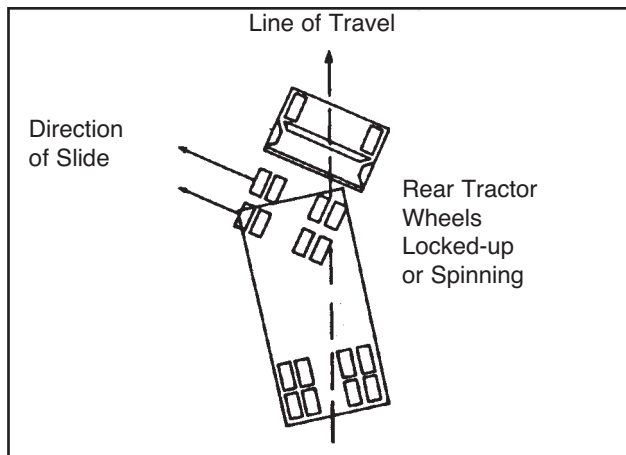
Learning to stay off the brake, turn the steering wheel quickly, push in the clutch, and countersteer in a skid takes a lot of practice. The best place to get this practice is on a large driving range or “skid pad.”

### • Front-Wheel Skids

Most front-wheel skids are caused by driving too fast for conditions. Other causes are: lack of tread on the front tires, and cargo loaded so not enough weight is on the front axle. In a front-wheel skid, the front end tends to go in a straight line regardless of how much you turn the steering wheel. On a very slippery surface, you may not be able to steer around a curve or turn.

When a front-wheel skid occurs, the only way to stop the skid is to let the vehicle slow down. Stop turning and/or braking so hard. Slow down as quickly as possible without skidding.

Figure 2-14--Tractor Jackknife



### Test Your Knowledge

1. Stopping is not always the safest thing to do in an emergency. True or False?
2. What are some advantages of going right instead of left around an obstacle?
3. What is an "escape ramp?"
4. If a tire blows out, you should put the brakes on hard to stop quickly. True or False?

These questions may be on the test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Sections 2.15 and 2.16.

## 2.17 ACCIDENT PROCEDURES

When you're in an accident and not seriously hurt, you need to act to prevent further damage or injury. The basic steps to be taken at any accident are to:

- Protect the area.
- Notify authorities.
- Care for the injured.

### ● Protect the Area

The first thing to do at an accident scene is to keep another accident from happening at the same spot. To protect the accident area:

- If your vehicle is involved in the accident, try to get it to the side of the road. This will help prevent another accident and allow traffic to move.
- If you're stopping to help, park away from the accident. The area immediately around the accident will be needed for emergency vehicles.

- Put on your flashers.
- Set out reflective triangles to warn other traffic. Make sure they can be seen by other drivers in time for them to avoid the accident.

### ● Notify Authorities

If you have a CB, put out a call over the emergency channel before you get out of your vehicle. If not, wait until after the accident scene has been properly protected, then phone or send someone to phone the police. Try to determine where you are so you can give the exact location.

### ● Care for the Injured

If a qualified person is at the accident and helping the injured, stay out of the way unless asked to assist. Otherwise, do the best you can to help any injured parties. Here are some simple steps to follow in giving assistance:

- Don't move a severely injured person unless the danger of fire or passing traffic makes it necessary.
- Stop heavy bleeding by applying direct pressure to the wound.
- Keep the injured person warm.

## 2.18 FIRES

Truck fires can cause damage and injury. Learn the causes of fires and how to prevent them. Know what to do to extinguish fires.

### ● Causes of Fire

The following are some causes of vehicle fires:

**After Accidents.** Spilled fuel, improper use of flares.

**Tires.** Under-inflated tires and duals that touch.

**Electrical System.** Short circuits due to damaged insulation, loose connections.

**Fuel.** Driver smoking, improper fueling, loose fuel connections.

**Cargo.** Flammable cargo, improperly sealed or loaded, poor ventilation.

### ● Fire Prevention

Pay attention to the following:

**Pre-trip Inspection.** Make a complete inspection of the electrical, fuel, and exhaust systems, tires, and cargo. Be sure to check that the fire extinguisher is charged.

**En Route Inspection.** Check the tires, wheels, and truck body for signs of heat whenever you stop during a trip.

**Follow Safe Procedures.** Follow correct safety procedures for fueling the vehicle, using brakes, handling flares, and other activities that can cause a fire.

**Monitoring.** Check the instruments and gauges often for signs of overheating and use the mirrors to look for signs of smoke from tires or the vehicle.

**Caution.** Use normal caution in handling anything flammable.

### ● Fire Fighting

Knowing how to fight fires is important. Fires have been made worse by drivers who didn't know what to do. Know how the fire extinguisher works. Study the instructions printed on the extinguisher before you need it. Here are some procedures to follow in case of fire:

**Pull Off the Road.** The first step is to get the vehicle off the road and stop. In doing so:

- Park in an open area, away from buildings, trees, brush, other vehicles, or anything that might catch fire.
- Don't pull into a service station!
- Notify emergency services of your problem and your location.

**Keep the Fire From Spreading.** Before trying to put out the fire, make sure that it doesn't spread any further.

- With an **engine** fire, turn off the engine as soon as you can. Don't open the hood if you can avoid it. Shoot extinguishers through louvers, radiator, or from the underside of the vehicle.
- For a **cargo** fire in a van or box trailer, keep the doors shut, especially if your cargo contains hazardous materials. Opening the van doors will supply the fire with oxygen and can cause it to burn very fast.

### ● Use the Right Fire Extinguisher.

The B:C type fire extinguisher is designed to work on electrical fires and burning liquids. The A:B:C type is designed to work on burning wood, paper, and cloth as well.

- Water can be used on wood, paper, or cloth, but don't use water on an electrical fire (you could get shocked) or a gasoline fire (it will just spread the flames).
- A burning tire must be cooled. Lots of water may be required.
- If you're not sure what to use, especially on a hazardous materials fire, wait for qualified firefighters.

**Extinguish the Fire.** Here are some rules to follow in putting out a fire:

- Only try to extinguish a fire if you know what you are doing and it is safe to do so.
- When using the extinguisher, stay as far away from the fire as possible.
- Aim at the source or base of the fire, not up in the flames.
- Position yourself upwind. Let the wind carry the extinguisher to the fire rather than carrying the flames to you.
- Continue until whatever was burning has been cooled. Absence of smoke or flame does not mean the fire is completely out or cannot restart.

### Test Your Knowledge

- 1.What are some things to do at an accident scene to prevent another accident?
- 2.Name two causes of tire fires.
- 3.What kinds of fires is a B:C extinguisher not good for?
- 4.When using your extinguisher, should you get as close as possible to the fire?
5. Name some causes of vehicle fires.

These questions may be on the test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Sections 2.17 and 2.18.

## 2.19 STAYING ALERT AND FIT TO DRIVE

Driving a vehicle for long hours is tiring. Even the best of drivers will become less alert. However, there are things that good drivers do to help stay alert and safe. Here are a few suggestions:

### ● Be Ready to Drive

**Get Enough Sleep.** Leaving on a long trip when you're already tired is dangerous. If you have a long trip scheduled, make sure that you get enough sleep before you go.



Most people require 7-8 hours of sleep every 24 hours.

**Schedule Trips Safely.** Your body gets used to sleeping during certain hours. If you are driving during those hours, you will be less alert. If possible, try to schedule trips for the hours you are normally awake. Many heavy motor vehicle accidents occur between midnight and 6 a.m. Tired drivers can easily fall asleep at these times, especially if they don't regularly drive at those hours. Trying to push on and finish a long trip at these times can be very dangerous.

**Avoid Medication.** Many medicines can make you sleepy. Those that do have a label warning against operating vehicles or machinery. The most common medicine of this type is an ordinary cold pill. If you have to drive with a cold, you are better off suffering from the cold than from the effects of the medicine.

**Keep Cool.** A hot, poorly ventilated cab can make you sleepy. Keep the window or vent cracked or use the air conditioner, if you have one.

**Take Breaks.** Short breaks can keep you alert. But the time to take them is before you feel really drowsy or tired. Stop often. Walk around and inspect your vehicle. It may help to do some physical exercises.

#### ● When You Do Become Sleepy

When you are sleepy, trying to "push on" is far more dangerous than most drivers think. It is a major cause of fatal accidents. Here are some important rules to follow:

**Stop to Sleep.** When your body needs sleep, sleep is the only thing that will work. If you have to make a stop anyway, make it whenever you feel the first signs of sleepiness, even if it is earlier than you planned. By getting up a little earlier the next day, you can keep on schedule without the danger of driving while you are not alert.

**Take a Nap.** If you can't stop for the night, at least pull off at a safe place, such as a rest area or truck stop, and take a nap. A nap as short as a half-hour will do more to overcome fatigue than a half-hour coffee stop.

**Avoid Drugs.** There are no drugs that can overcome being tired. While they may keep you awake for a while, they won't make you alert. And eventually, you'll be even more tired than if you hadn't taken them at all. Sleep is the only thing that can overcome fatigue.

#### ● Alcohol and Driving

Drinking alcohol and then driving is a very serious problem. People who drink alcohol are involved in traffic accidents resulting in over 20,000 deaths every year. You should know:

- How alcohol works in the human body.
- How it affects driving.
- Laws regarding drinking and driving.
- Legal, financial, and safety risks of drinking and driving.

**The Truth About Alcohol.** There are many dangerous ideas about the use of alcohol. The driver who believes in these wrong ideas will be more likely to get into trouble. Here are some examples:

FALSE	THE TRUTH
Alcohol increases your ability to drive	Alcohol is a drug that will make you less alert and reduce your ability to drive safely
Some people can drink a lot and not be affected	Everyone who drinks is affected by alcohol
If you eat a lot first, you won't get drunk	Food will not keep you from getting drunk
Coffee and a little fresh air will help a drinker sober up	Only time will help a drinker sober up—other methods just don't work
Stick with beer—it's not as strong as wine or whiskey	A few beers are the same as a few shots of whiskey or a few glasses of wine

**What Is a Drink?** It is the alcohol in drinks that affects human performance. It doesn't make any difference whether that alcohol comes from "a couple of beers" or from two glasses of wine or two shots of hard liquor.

All of the following drinks **contain the same amount of alcohol**:

- A 12-ounce glass of 5% beer.
- A 5-ounce glass of 12% wine.
- A 1-1/2 ounce shot of 80 proof liquor.

**How Alcohol Works.** Alcohol goes directly from the stomach into the blood stream. A drinker can control the amount of alcohol which he or she takes in, by having fewer drinks or none. However, the drinker cannot control how fast the body gets rid of alcohol. If you have drinks faster than the body can get rid of them, you will have more alcohol in your body and your driving will be more affected. The amount of

alcohol in your body is commonly measured by the Blood Alcohol Concentration (BAC).

**What Determines Blood Alcohol Concentration.** BAC is determined by the amount of alcohol you drink (more alcohol means higher BAC), how fast you drink (faster drinking means higher BAC), and your weight (a small person doesn't have to drink as much to reach the same BAC).

**Alcohol and the Brain.** Alcohol affects more and more of the brain as BAC builds up. The first part of the brain affected controls judgement and self-control. One of the bad things about this is it can keep drinkers from knowing they are getting drunk. And, of course, good judgement and self-control are absolutely necessary for safe driving.

As blood alcohol concentration continues to build up, muscle control, vision, and coordination are affected more and more. Eventually, a person will pass out.

**How Alcohol Affects Driving.** All drivers are affected by drinking alcohol. Alcohol affects judgement, vision, coordination, and reaction time. It causes serious driving errors, such as:

- Increased reaction time to hazards.
- Driving too fast or too slow.
- Driving in the wrong lane.
- Running over the curb.
- Weaving.
- Straddling lanes.
- Quick, jerky starts.
- Not signaling, failure to use lights.
- Running stop signs and red lights.
- Improper passing.

These effects mean increased chances of a crash and chances of losing your driver's license. Accident statistics show that the chance of a crash is much greater for drivers who have been drinking than for drivers who were not.

#### ● Other Drugs

Besides alcohol, other legal and illegal drugs are being used more often. Laws prohibit possession or use of many drugs while on duty. They prohibit being under the influence of any "controlled substance": an amphetamine (including "pep pills" and "bennies"), narcotic, or any other substance which

can make the driver unsafe. This could include a variety of prescription and over-the-counter drugs (cold medicines) which may make the driver drowsy or otherwise affect safe driving ability. However, possession and use of a drug given to a driver by a doctor is permitted if the doctor informs the driver that it will not affect safe driving ability.

Pay attention to warning labels of legitimate drugs and medicines and to doctor's orders regarding possible effects. Stay away from illegal drugs. Don't use any drug that hides fatigue--the only cure for fatigue is rest. Alcohol can make the effects of other drugs much worse. The safest rule is don't mix drugs with driving at all.

Use of drugs can lead to traffic accidents resulting in death, injury, and property damage. Furthermore, it can lead to arrest, fines, and jail sentences. It can also mean the end of a person's driving career.

#### ● Illness

Once in a while, you may become so ill that you cannot operate a motor vehicle safely. If this happens to you, you must not drive. However, in case of an emergency you may drive to the nearest place where you can safely stop.

---

## 2.20 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS RULES FOR ALL COMMERCIAL DRIVERS

All drivers should know something about hazardous materials. You must be able to recognize hazardous cargo, and you must know whether or not you can haul it without having a hazardous materials endorsement to your CDL license.

#### ● What Are Hazardous Materials

Hazardous materials are products that pose a risk to health, safety, and property during transportation. Figure 2-15 is the hazardous material table found in the federal rules. This table lists the nine different hazard classes.

#### ● Why Are There Rules?

You must follow the many rules about transporting them. The intent of the rules is to:

- Contain the product.
- Communicate the risk.
- Ensure safe drivers and equipment.



**To Contain the Product.** Many hazardous products can injure or kill on contact. To protect drivers and others from contact, the rules tell shippers how to package safely. Similar rules tell drivers how to load, transport, and unload bulk tanks. These are containment rules.

**To Communicate the Risk.** The shipper uses a shipping paper and package labels to warn dockworkers and drivers of the risk. Shipping orders, bills of lading, and manifests are all examples of shipping papers.

The shipping paper describes the hazardous materials being transported. Shipping orders, bills of lading, and manifests are all shipping papers. Shippers put diamond-shaped hazard warning labels on most hazardous materials packages. These labels inform others of the hazard. If the diamond label won't fit on the container, shippers put the label on a tag. For example, compressed gas cylinders that will not hold a label will have tags or decals. Labels look like the examples shown in Figure 2-16.

*Figure 2-15--Hazardous Materials Hazard Class/Division Table*

Class	Division	Name of Class Or Division	Example
1	1.1	Mass Explosives	Dynamite
	1.2	Projection Hazards	Flares
	1.3	Mass Fire Hazards	Display Fireworks
	1.4	Minor Hazards	Ammunition
	1.5	Very Insensitive	Blasting Agents
	1.6	Extremely Insensitive	Explosive Devices
2	2.1	Flammable Gases	Propane
	2.2	Non-Flammable Gases	Helium
	2.3	Poisonous/Toxic Gases	Fluorine, Compressed
3	---	Flammable Liquids	Gasoline
4	4.1	Flammable Solids	Ammonium Picrate, Wetted
	4.2	Spontaneously Combustible	White Phosphorus
	4.3	Spontaneously Combustible when wet	Sodium
5	5.1	Oxidizers	Ammonium Nitrate
	5.2	Organic Peroxides	Methyl Ethyl Ketone Peroxide
6	6.1	Poison (Toxic Material)	Potassium Cyanide
	6.2	Infectious Substances	Anthrax Virus
7	---	Radioactive	Uranium
8	---	Corrosives	Battery Fluid
9	---	Miscellaneous Hazardous Materials	Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCB)
None	---	ORM-D (Other Regulated Material-Domestic)	Food Flavorings, Medicines
None	---	Combustible Liquids	Fuel Oil

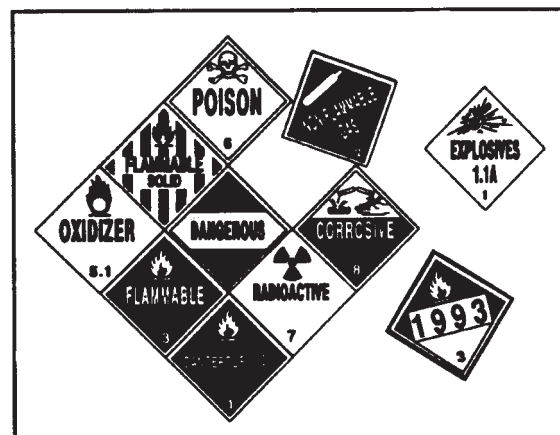
After an accident or hazardous material spill or leak, you may be injured and unable to communicate the hazards of the materials you are transporting. Firefighters and police can prevent or reduce the amount of damage or injury at the scene if they know what hazardous materials are being carried. Your life, and the lives of others, may depend on quickly locating the hazardous materials shipping papers. For that reason, you must tab shipping papers related to hazardous materials or keep them on top of other shipping papers. You must also keep shipping papers:

- In a pouch on the driver's door, or
- In clear view within reach while driving, or
- On the driver's seat when out of the vehicle.

### • Lists of Regulated Products

**Placards** are used to warn others of hazardous materials. Placards are signs put on the outside of a vehicle which identify the hazard class of the cargo. A placarded vehicle must have at least four identical placards. They are put on the front, rear, and both sides (see Figure 9-3). Placards must be readable from all four directions. They are 10-3/4 inches square, turned upright on a point, in a diamond shape. Cargo tanks and other bulk packaging display the identification number of their contents on placards or orange panels.

*Figure 2-16--Examples of Labels*



Not all vehicles carrying hazardous materials need to have placards. The rules about placards are given in Section 9 of this manual. You can drive a vehicle that carries hazardous materials if it does not require placards. If it requires placards, you must not drive it unless your driver's license has the hazardous materials endorsement.

**To Ensure Safe Drivers and Equipment.** The rules require all drivers of placarded vehicles to learn how to safely load

and transport hazardous products. They must have a commercial driver's license with the hazardous materials endorsement.

To get the required endorsement you must pass a written test on material found in Section 9 of this manual. You also will need a tank endorsement if you transport hazardous products in a cargo tank on a truck larger than 26,000 pounds, gross vehicle weight rating.

Drivers who need the hazardous materials endorsement must learn the placard rules. If you do not know if your vehicle needs placards, ask your employer. **Never drive a vehicle needing placards unless you have the hazardous materials endorsement.** To do so is a crime. When stopped, you will be cited and you will not be allowed to drive your truck further. It will cost you time and money. A failure to placard when needed will risk your life and others if you have an accident. Emergency help will not know of your hazardous cargo.

Hazardous materials drivers must also know which products they can load together, and which they cannot. These rules are also in Section 9. Before loading a truck with more than one type of product, you must know if it is safe to load them together. If you do not know, ask your employer.

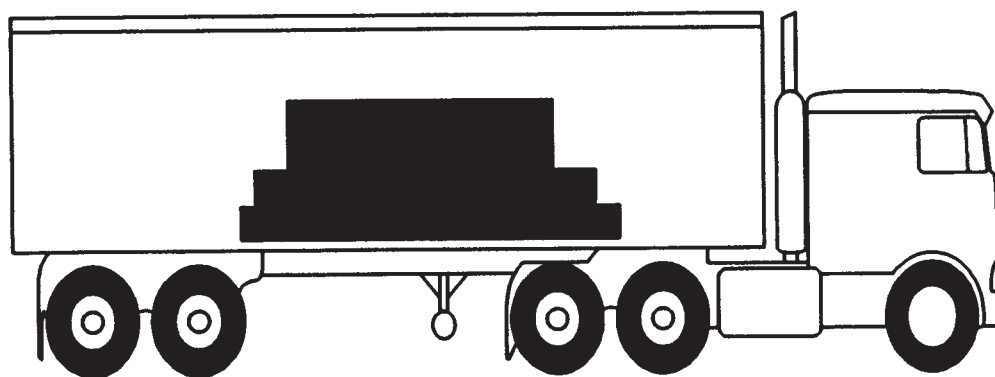
Test Your Knowledge
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Common medicines for colds can make you sleepy. True or False?</li><li>2. What should you do if you do become sleepy while driving?</li><li>3. Coffee and a little fresh air will help a drinker sober up. True or False?</li><li>4. What is a hazardous materials placard?</li><li>5. Why are placards used?</li></ol>
These questions may be on the test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Sections 2.19 and 2.20.

---

## Section 3

---

### Transporting Cargo Safely



THIS SECTION IS FOR  
ALL COMMERCIAL DRIVERS

# Section 3: Transporting Cargo Safely

## This Section Covers

- **Inspecting Cargo**
- **Cargo Weight & Balance**
- **Securing Cargo**
- **Liquids in Bulk**
- **Other Cargo Needing Care**

This section tells you about hauling cargo safely. You must understand basic cargo safety rules to get a CDL.

If you load cargo wrong or do not secure it, it can be a danger to others and yourself. Loose cargo that falls off a vehicle can cause traffic problems and others could be hurt or killed. Loose cargo could hurt or kill you during a quick stop or crash. Your vehicle could be damaged by an overload. Steering could be affected by how a vehicle is loaded, making it more difficult to control the vehicle.

Whether or not you load and secure the cargo yourself, you are responsible for:

- Inspecting your cargo.
- Recognizing overloads and poorly balanced weight.
- Knowing if your cargo is properly secured.

These are discussed below.

If you intend to carry hazardous material that requires placards on your vehicle, you will also have to have a hazardous materials endorsement. Section 9 of this manual has the information you need to pass the hazardous materials test.

### 3.1 INSPECTING CARGO

As part of your pre-trip inspection, make sure the truck is not overloaded and the cargo is balanced and secured properly.

- **Before Starting**

Inspect the cargo and its securing devices again within 25 miles after beginning a trip. Make any adjustments needed. Check the cargo and securing devices as often as necessary during a trip to keep the load secure. A good habit is to inspect again:

- **Every 3 hrs/150 miles**
  - After you have driven for 3 hours or 150 miles.

- **After Every Break**

- After every break you take during driving.

Federal, state, and local regulations for commercial vehicle weight, securing cargo, covering loads, and where you can drive large vehicles vary from place to place. Know the rules where you will be driving.

### 3.2 WEIGHT & BALANCE

You are responsible for not being overloaded. Here are some definitions of weight you should know:

- **Definitions You Should Know**

**Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW).** The total weight of a single vehicle plus its load.

**Gross Combination Weight (GCW).** The total weight of a powered unit plus trailers plus the cargo.

**Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR).** The maximum GVW specified by the manufacturer for a single vehicle plus its load.

**Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR).** The maximum GCW specified by the manufacturer for a specific combination of vehicles plus its load.

**Axle Weight.** The weight transmitted to the ground by one axle or one set of axles.

**Tire Load.** The maximum safe weight a tire can carry at a specified pressure. This rating is stated on the side of each tire.

**Suspension Systems.** Suspension systems have a manufacturer's weight capacity rating.

**Coupling Device Capacity.** Coupling devices are rated for the maximum weight they can pull and/or carry.

- **Legal Weight Limits**

You must keep weights within legal limits. States have maximums for GVWs, GCWs and axle weights. Often, maximum axle weights are set by a bridge formula. A bridge formula permits less maximum axle weight for axles that are closer together. This is to prevent overloading bridges and roadways.

Overloading can have bad effects on steering, braking, and speed control. Overloaded trucks have to go very slow on upgrades. Worse, they may gain too much speed on downgrades. Stopping distance increases. Brakes can fail when forced to work too hard.

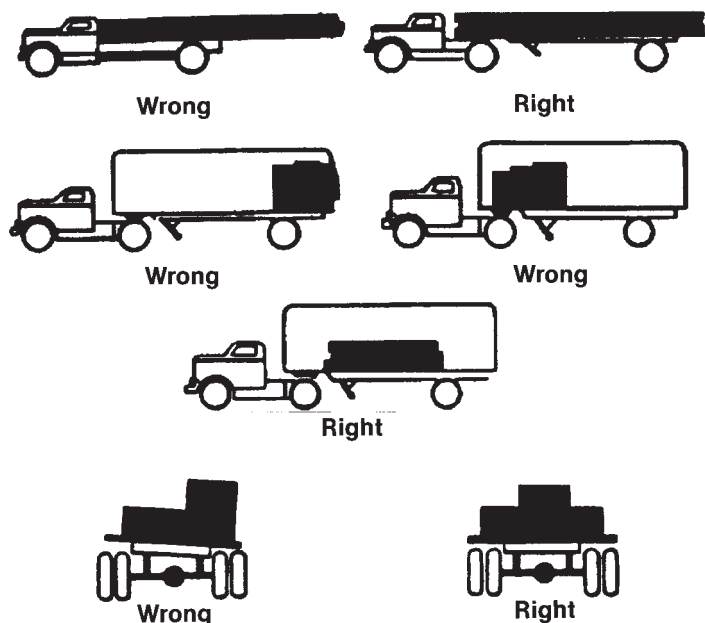
During bad weather or in mountains, it may not be safe to operate at legal maximum weights. Take this into account before driving.

#### ● Don't Be Top-Heavy

The height of the vehicle's center of gravity is very important for safe handling. A high center of gravity (cargo piled up high or heavy cargo on top) means you are more likely to tip over. It is most dangerous in curves or if you have to swerve to avoid a hazard. It is very important to distribute the cargo so it is as low as possible. Put the heaviest parts of the cargo under the lightest parts.

Poor weight balance can make vehicle handling unsafe. Too much weight on the steering axle can cause hard steering. It can damage the steering axle and tires. Underloaded front axles, caused by shifting weight too far to the rear, can make the steering axle weight too light to steer safely. Too little weight on the driving axles can cause poor traction. The drive wheels may spin easily. During bad weather, the truck may not be able to keep going. Weight that is loaded so there is a high center of gravity causes greater chance of rollover. On flatbed vehicles, there is also a greater chance that the load will shift to the side or fall off. Figure 3-1 shows examples of the right and wrong way to balance cargo weight.

Figure 3-1--Always load cargo the right way



#### Test Your Knowledge

1. For what three things related to cargo are drivers responsible?
2. How often must you stop while on the road to check your cargo?
3. How is **Gross Combination Weight Rating** different from **Gross Combination Weight**?
4. Name two situations where legal maximum weights may not be safe.
5. What can happen if you don't have enough weight on the front axle?

These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Sections 3.1 and 3.2.

### 3.3 SECURING CARGO

#### ● Blocking and Bracing

Blocking is used in the front, back, and/or sides of a piece of cargo to keep it from sliding. Blocking is shaped to fit snugly against cargo. It is secured to the cargo deck to prevent cargo movement. **Bracing** is also used to prevent movement of cargo. Bracing goes from the upper part of the cargo to the floor and/or walls of the cargo compartment.

#### ● Cargo Tiedown

On flatbed trailers or trailers without sides, cargo must be secured to keep it from shifting or falling off. In closed vans, tiedowns can also be important to prevent cargo shifting that may affect the handling of the vehicle. Tiedowns must be of the proper type and proper strength. The combined strength of all cargo tiedowns must be strong enough to lift one and one half times the weight of the piece of cargo tied down. Proper tiedown equipment must be used, including ropes, straps, chains, and tensioning devices (winches, ratchets, clinching components). Tiedowns must be attached to the vehicle correctly (hook, bolt, rails, rings).

Cargo should have at least one tiedown for each 10 feet of cargo. Make sure you have enough tiedowns to meet this need. No matter how small the cargo, it should have at least two tiedowns holding it.

There are special requirements for securing various heavy pieces of metal. Find out what they are if you are to carry such loads.

#### ● Header Boards

Front end header boards ("headache racks") protect you from your cargo in case of a crash or emergency stop. Make sure the front end structure is in good condition.

The front end structure should block the forward movement of any cargo you carry.

- **Covering Cargo**

There are two basic reasons for covering cargo, (1) to protect people from spilled cargo, and (2) to protect the cargo from weather. Spill protection is a safety requirement in many states. Be familiar with the laws in the states you drive in.

You should look at your cargo covers in the mirrors from time to time while driving. A flapping cover can tear loose, uncovering the cargo, and possibly block your view or someone else's.

You cannot inspect sealed loads, but you should check that you don't exceed gross weight and axle weight limits.

- **Sealed & Containerized**

Containerized loads generally are used when freight is carried part way by rail or ship. Delivery by truck occurs at the beginning and/or end of the journey. Some containers have their own tiedown devices or locks that attach directly to a special frame. Others have to be loaded onto flat bed trailers. They must be properly secured just like any other cargo.

### 3.4 OTHER CARGO NEEDING SPECIAL ATTENTION

- **Dry Bulk**

**Dry bulk tanks** require special care because they often have a high center of gravity, and the load can shift. Be extremely cautious (slow and careful) going around curves and making sharp turns.

- **Hanging Meat**

**Hanging meat** (suspended beef, pork, lamb) in a refrigerated truck can be a very unstable load with a high center of gravity. Particular caution is needed on sharp curves such as offramps and onramps. Go slow.

- **Livestock**

**Livestock** can move around in a trailer, causing unsafe handling. With less than a full load, use false bulkheads to keep livestock bunched together. Even when bunched, special care is necessary because livestock can lean on curves. This shifts the center of gravity and makes rollover more likely.

- **Oversized Loads**

**Over length, over width, and/or over weight loads** require special transit permits. Driving is usually limited to certain times. Special equipment may be necessary such as "wide load" signs, flashing lights, flags, etc. Such loads may require a police escort or pilot vehicles bearing warning signs and/or flashing lights. These special loads require special driving care.

Test Your Knowledge
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. What is the minimum number of tiedowns for any flatbed load?</li><li>2. What is the minimum number of tiedowns for a 20 ft. load?</li><li>3. Name the two basic reasons for covering cargo on an open bed.</li><li>4. What must you check before transporting a sealed load?</li></ol>
These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Sections 3.3 and 3.4.

---

## PART TWO

---

4. Transporting Passengers
5. Air Brakes
6. Combination Vehicles
7. Doubles and Triples
8. Tank Vehicles
9. Hazardous Materials
10. School Buses

DETERMINE WHICH OF THESE  
SECTIONS YOU NEED TO STUDY

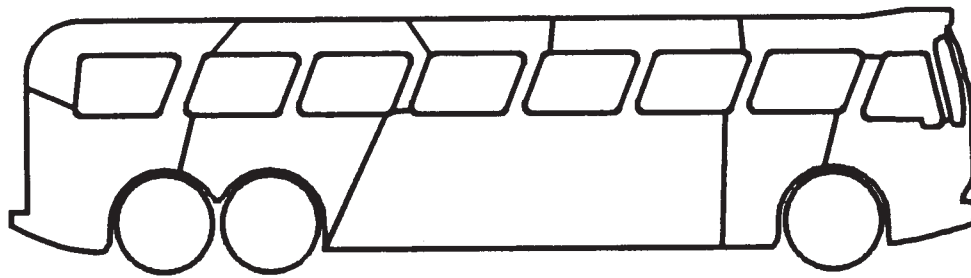


---

## Section 4

---

### Transporting Passengers



THIS SECTION IS FOR DRIVERS  
NEEDING A PASSENGER ENDORSEMENT

# Section 4: Transporting Passengers

## This Section Covers

- Definition of a Bus
- Pre-trip Inspection
- Loading
- Safe Driving with Buses

Bus drivers must have a commercial driver's license if they drive a vehicle designed to seat more than 15 persons, including the driver.

Bus drivers must have a passenger endorsement on their commercial driver license. To get the endorsement you must pass a knowledge test on Sections 2 and 4 of this manual. If your bus has air brakes, you must also pass a knowledge test on Section 5. You must also pass the skills tests required for the class of vehicle you drive.

### 4.1 PRE-TRIP INSPECTION

Before driving your bus, you must be sure it is safe. You must review the inspection report made by the previous driver. Only if defects reported earlier have been certified as repaired or not needed to be repaired, should you sign the previous driver's report. This is your certification that the defects reported earlier have been fixed.

#### ● Vehicle Systems

Make sure things are in good working order before driving:

- Service brakes, including air hose couplings (if your bus has a trailer or semi-trailer).
- Parking brake.
- Steering mechanism.
- Lights and reflectors.
- Tires (front wheels must not have recapped or regrooved tires).
- Horn.
- Windshield wiper or wipers.
- Rear-vision mirror or mirrors
- Coupling devices (if present).
- Wheels and rims.

- Emergency Equipment.

#### ● Access Doors & Panels

As you check the outside of the bus, close any open emergency exits. Also, close any open access panels for baggage, restroom service, engine, etc. before driving.

#### ● Bus Interior

People sometimes damage unattended buses. Always check the interior of the bus before driving to ensure rider safety. Aisles and stairwells should always be clear. The following parts of your bus must be in safe working condition:

- Each handhold and railing.
- Floor covering.
- Signaling devices, including the restroom emergency buzzer, if the bus has a restroom.
- Emergency exit handles.

The seats must be safe for riders. All seats must be securely fastened to the bus.

Never drive with an open emergency exit door or window. The "Emergency Exit" sign on an emergency door must be clearly visible. If there is a red emergency door light, it must work. Turn it on at night or any other time you use your outside lights.

#### ● Roof Hatches

You may lock some emergency roof hatches in a partly open position for fresh air. Do not leave them open as a regular practice. Keep in mind the bus's higher clearance while driving with them open.

Make sure your bus has the fire extinguisher and emergency reflectors required by law. The bus must also have spare electrical fuses, unless equipped with circuit breakers.

#### ● Use Your Seat Belt

The driver's seat should have a seat belt. Always use it for safety.

## 4.2 LOADING AND TRIP START

Do not allow riders to leave carry-on baggage in a doorway or aisle. There should be nothing in the aisle that might trip other riders. Secure baggage and freight in ways that avoid damage and:

- Allow the driver to move freely and easily.
- Allow riders to exit by any window or door in an emergency.
- Protect riders from injury if carry-ons fall or shift.

### • Hazardous Materials

Watch for cargo or baggage containing hazardous materials. Most hazardous materials cannot be carried on a bus.

The Federal Hazardous Materials Table shows which materials are hazardous. They pose a risk to health, safety, and property during transportation. The rules require shippers to mark containers of hazardous material with the material's name, ID number, and hazard label. There are 9 different 4 inch, diamond-shaped hazard labels like the examples shown in Figure 4-1. Watch for the diamond-shaped labels. Do not transport any hazardous material unless you are sure the rules allow it.

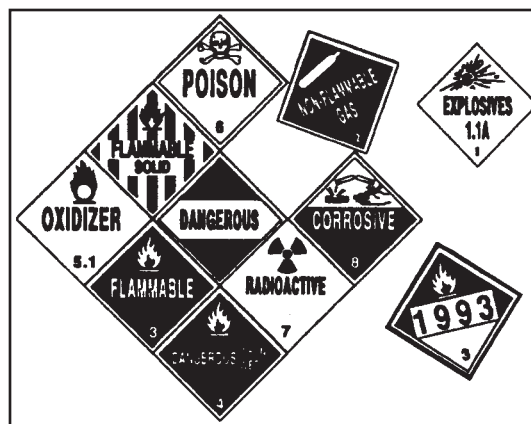
### • Forbidden Hazardous Materials

Buses may carry small-arms ammunition labeled ORM-D, emergency hospital supplies, and drugs. You can carry small amounts of some other hazardous materials if the shipper cannot send them any other way. Buses must never carry:

- Class 2 poison, liquid Class 6 poison, tear gas, irritating material.
- More than 100 pounds of solid Class 6 poisons.
- Explosives in the space occupied by people, except small arms ammunition.
- Labeled radioactive materials in the space occupied by people.
- More than 500 pounds total of allowed hazardous materials, and no more than 100 pounds of any one class.

Riders sometimes board a bus with an unlabeled hazardous material. They may not know it is unsafe. Do not allow riders to carry on common hazards such as car batteries or gasoline.

Figure 4-1--Examples of Labels



### • Standee Line

No rider may stand forward of the rear of the driver's seat. Buses designed to allow standing must have a 2 inch line on the floor or some other means of showing riders where they cannot stand. This is called the standee line. All standing riders must stay behind it.

### • At Your Destination

When arriving at the destination or intermediate stops announce:

- The location,
- Reason for stopping,
- Next departure time, and
- Bus number.

Remind riders to take carry-ons with them when they get off the bus. If the aisle is on a lower level than the seats, remind riders of the step down. It is best to tell them before coming to a complete stop.

Charter bus drivers should not allow riders on the bus until departure time. This will help prevent theft or vandalism of the bus.

### Test Your Knowledge

1. Name some things to check in the interior of a bus during a pre-trip inspection.
2. What are some hazardous materials you can transport by bus?
3. What are some hazardous materials you can't transport by bus?
4. What is a standee line?

These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Sections 4.1 and 4.2.

---

## 4.3 ON THE ROAD

### ● Passenger Supervision

Many charter and intercity carriers have passenger comfort and safety rules. Mention rules about smoking, drinking, or use of radio and tape players at the start of the trip. Explaining the rules at the start will help to avoid trouble later on.

While driving, scan the interior of your bus as well as the road ahead, to the sides, and to the rear. You may have to remind riders about rules, or to keep arms and heads inside the bus.

### ● At Stops

Riders can stumble when getting on or off and when the bus starts or stops. Caution riders to watch their step when leaving the bus. Wait for them to sit down or brace themselves before starting. Starting and stopping should be as smooth as possible to avoid rider injury.

Occasionally, you may have a drunk or disruptive rider. You must ensure this rider's safety as well as that of others. Don't discharge such riders where it would be unsafe for them. It may be safer at the next scheduled stop or a well-lighted area where there are other people. Many carriers have guidelines for handling disruptive riders.

### ● Common Accidents

**The most common bus crashes.** Bus crashes often happen at intersections. Use caution, even if a signal or stop sign controls other traffic. School and mass transit buses sometimes scrape off mirrors or hit passing vehicles when pulling out from a bus stop. Remember the clearance your bus needs, and watch for poles and tree limbs at stops. Know the size of the gap your bus needs to accelerate and merge with traffic. Wait for the gap to open before leaving the stop. Never assume other drivers will brake to give you room when you signal or start to pull out.

### ● Speed on Curves

Crashes on curves that kill people and destroy buses result from excessive speed, often when rain or snow has made the road slippery. Every banked curve has a safe "design speed." In good weather, the posted speed is safe for cars but it may be too high for many buses. With good traction, the bus may roll over; with poor traction, it might slide off the curve. Reduce speed for curves. If your bus leans toward the outside on a banked curve, you are driving too fast.

### ● Railroad Crossings Stops

**Stop at RR crossings.** Stop your bus between 15 and 50 feet before railroad crossings. Listen and look in both directions for trains. You should open your forward door if it improves your ability to see or hear an approaching train. Before crossing after a train has passed, make sure there isn't another train coming in the other direction on other tracks. If your bus has a manual transmission, never change gears while crossing the tracks.

You do not have to stop, but must slow down and carefully check for other vehicles:

- At street car crossings.
- At railroad tracks used only for industrial switching within a business district.
- Where a policeman or flagman is directing traffic.
- If a traffic signal shows green, and
- At crossings marked as "exempt" or "abandoned."

### ● Drawbridges

**Stop at drawbridges.** Stop at drawbridges that do not have a signal light or traffic control attendant. Stop at least 50 feet before the draw of the bridge. Look to make sure the draw is completely closed before crossing. You do not need to stop, but must slow down and make sure it's safe, when:

- there is a traffic light showing green.
- the bridge has an attendant or traffic officer that controls traffic whenever the bridge opens.

---

## 4.4 AFTER-TRIP VEHICLE INSPECTION

Inspect your bus at the end of each shift. If you work for an interstate carrier, you must complete a written inspection report for each bus driven. The report must specify each bus and list any defect that would affect safety or result in a breakdown. If there are no defects, the report should say so.

Riders sometimes damage safety-related parts such as hand-holds, seats, emergency exits, and windows. If you report this damage at the end of a shift, mechanics can make repairs before the bus goes out again. Mass transit drivers should also make sure passenger signaling devices and brake-door interlocks work properly.

---

#### 4.5 PROHIBITED PRACTICES

Avoid fueling your bus with riders on board unless absolutely necessary. Never refuel in a closed building with riders on board.

Don't talk with riders, or engage in any other distracting activity, while driving.

Do not tow or push a disabled bus with riders aboard the vehicle, unless getting off would be unsafe. Only tow or push the bus to the nearest safe spot to discharge passengers. Follow your employer's guidelines on towing or pushing disabled buses.

---

#### 4.6 USE OF BRAKE-DOOR INTERLOCKS

Urban mass transit coaches may have a brake and accelerator interlock system. The interlock applies the brakes and holds the throttle in idle position when the rear door is open. The interlock releases when you close the rear door. Do not use this safety feature in place of the parking brake.

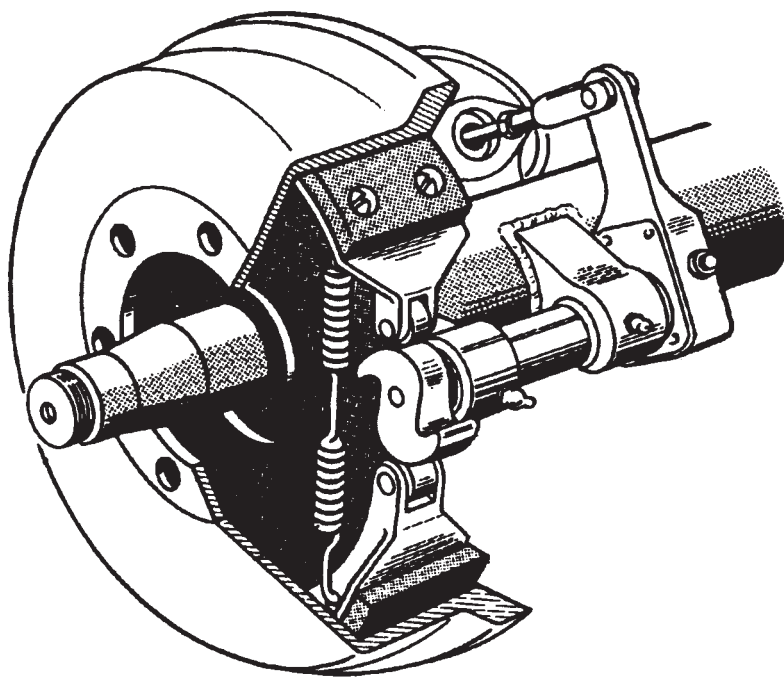
Test Your Knowledge
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Does it matter where you make a disruptive passenger get off the bus?</li><li>2. How far from a railroad crossing should you stop?</li><li>3. When must you stop before crossing a drawbridge?</li><li>4. Describe from memory the "prohibited practices" listed above.</li><li>5. The rear door of a transit bus has to be open to put on the parking brake. True or False?</li></ol>
These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Sections 4.3, 4.4, and 4.6.

---

## Section 5

---

### Air Brakes



THIS PART IS FOR DRIVERS WHO  
DRIVE VEHICLES WITH AIR BRAKES



# Section 5: Air Brakes

## This Section Covers

- **Air Brake System Parts**
- **Dual Air Brake Systems**
- **Inspecting Air Brakes**
- **Using Air Brakes**

This section tells you about air brakes. If you want to drive a truck or bus with air brakes, or pull a trailer with air brakes, you need to read this section. If you want to pull a trailer with air brakes, you also need to read Section 6: Combination Vehicles.

Air brakes use **compressed air** to make the brakes work. Air brakes are a good and safe way of stopping large and heavy vehicles, but the brakes must be well maintained and used properly.

Air brakes are really three different braking systems: service brake, parking brake, and emergency brake systems.

- The **service brake** system applies and releases the brakes when you use the brake pedal during normal driving.
- The **parking brake** system applies and releases the parking brakes when you use the parking brake control.
- The **emergency brake** system uses parts of the service and parking brake systems to stop the vehicle in the event of a brake system failure.

The parts of these systems are discussed in greater detail below.

## 5.1 THE PARTS OF AN AIR BRAKE SYSTEM

There are many parts to an air brake system. You should know about the parts discussed here.

### ● Air Compressor

The air compressor pumps air into the air storage tanks reservoirs. The air compressor is connected to the engine through gears or a belt. The compressor may be air cooled or may be cooled by the engine cooling system. It may have its own oil supply, or be lubricated by engine oil. If the compressor has its own oil supply, check the oil level before driving.

### ● Air Compressor Governor

The governor controls when the air compressor will pump air into the air storage tanks. When air tank pressure rises to the “cut-out” level (around 125 pounds per square inch or “psi”), the governor stops the compressor from pumping air. When the tank pressure falls to the “cut-in” pressure (around 100 psi), the governor allows the compressor to start pumping again.

### ● Air Storage Tanks

Air storage tanks are used to hold compressed air. The number and size of air tanks varies among vehicles. The tanks will hold enough air to allow the brakes to be used several times even if the compressor stops working.

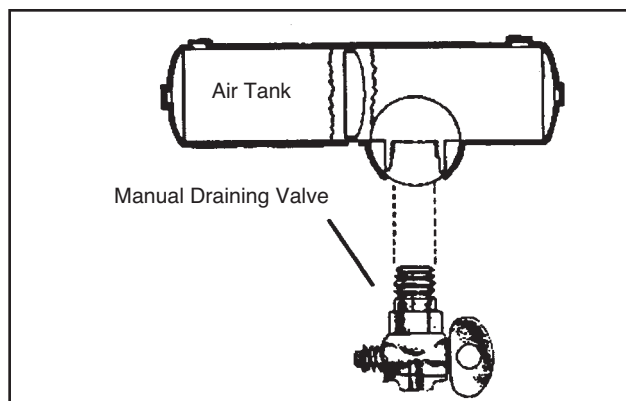
### ● Air Tank Drains

Compressed air usually has some water and some compressor oil in it which is bad for the air brake system. For example, the water can freeze in cold weather and cause brake failure. The water and oil tend to collect in the bottom of the air tank. Be sure that you drain the air tanks completely. Each air tank is equipped with a drain valve in the bottom. There are two types:

- Manually operated by turning a quarter turn, shown in Figure 5-1, or by pulling a cable. You must drain the tanks yourself at the end of each day of driving.
- Automatic--the water and oil is automatically expelled. They may be equipped for manual draining as well.

The automatic types are available with electric heating devices. These help prevent freeze-up of the automatic drain in cold weather.

Figure 5-1--Manual Drain Valve



- **Alcohol Evaporator**

Some air brake systems have an alcohol evaporator to put alcohol into the air system. This helps to reduce the risk of ice in air brake valves and other parts during cold weather. Ice inside the system can make the brakes stop working.

Check the alcohol container and fill up as necessary, every day during cold weather. **Daily air tank drainage is still needed to get rid of water and oil.** (Unless the system has automatic drain valves).

- **Safety Valve**

A safety relief valve is installed in the first tank the air compressor pumps air to. The safety valve protects the tank and the rest of the system from too much pressure. The valve is usually set to open at 150 psi. If the safety valve releases air, something is wrong. Have the fault fixed by a mechanic.

- **The Brake Pedal**

You put on the brakes by pushing down the brake pedal. It is also called the foot valve or treadle valve. Pushing the pedal down harder applies more air pressure. Letting up on the brake pedal reduces the air pressure and releases the brakes. Releasing the brakes lets some compressed air go out of the system, so the air pressure in the tanks is reduced. It must be made up by the air compressor. Pressing and releasing the pedal unnecessarily can let air out faster than the compressor can replace it. If the pressure gets too low, the brakes won't work.

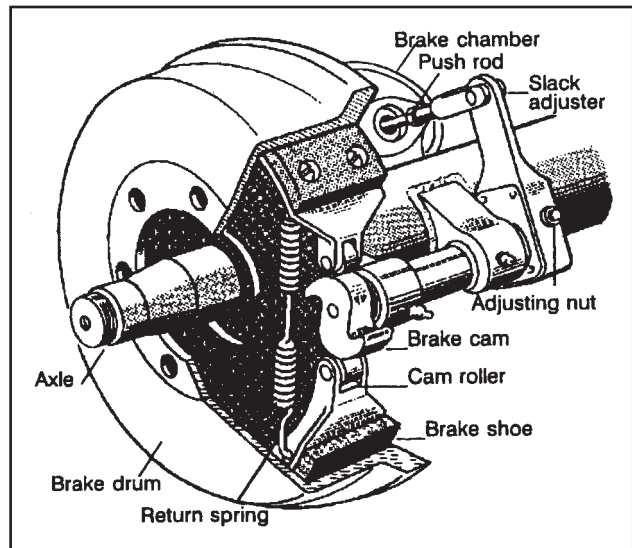
- **Foundation Brakes**

Foundation brakes are used at each wheel. The most common type is the s-cam drum brake, shown in Figure 5-2. The parts of the brake are discussed below:

**Brake Drums, Shoes, and Linings.** Brake drums are located on each end of the vehicle's axles. The wheels are bolted to the drums. The braking mechanism is inside the drum. To stop, the brake shoes and linings are pushed against the inside of the drum. This causes friction which slows the vehicle and creates heat. The heat a drum can take without damage depends on how hard and how long the brakes are used. Too much heat can make the brakes stop working.

**S-cam Brakes.** When you push the brake pedal, air is let into each brake chamber (see Figure 5-2). Air pressure pushes the rod out, moving the slack adjuster, thus twisting the brake cam shaft. This turns the s-cam so called because it is shaped like the letter "S". The s-cam forces the brake shoes away from one another and presses them against the inside of the brake drum. When you release the brake pedal, the s-cam rotates back and a spring pulls the brake shoes away from the drum, letting the wheels roll freely again.

Figure 5-2--S-cam Air Brake



**Wedge Brakes.** In this type brake, the brake chamber push rod pushes a wedge directly between the ends of two brake shoes. This shoves them apart and against the inside of the brake drum. Wedge brakes may have a single brake chamber, or two brake chambers, pushing wedges in at both ends of the brake shoes. Wedge type brakes may be self-adjusting or may require manual adjustment.

**Disc Brakes.** In air-operated disc brakes, air pressure acts on a brake chamber and slack adjuster, like s-cam brakes. But instead of the s-cam, a "power screw" is used. The pressure of the brake chamber on the slack adjuster turns the power screw. The power screw clamps the disc or rotor between the brake lining pads of a caliper, similar to a large c-clamp.

Wedge brakes and disc brakes are less common than s-cam brakes.

- **Supply Pressure Gauges**

All air-braked vehicles have a pressure gauge connected to the air tank. If the vehicle has a dual air brake system, there will be a gauge for each half of the system. Or a single gauge with two needles. Dual systems will be discussed later. These gauges tell you how much pressure is in the air tanks.

- **Application Pressure Gauge**

This gauge shows how much air pressure you are applying to the brakes. This gauge is not on all vehicles. Increasing application pressure to hold the same speed means the brakes are fading. You should slow down and use a lower gear.

The need for increased pressure can also be caused by brakes out of adjustment, air leaks, or mechanical problems.

### ● Low Air Pressure Warning

A low air pressure warning signal is required on vehicles with air brakes. A warning signal you can see must come on before the air pressure in the tanks falls below 60 psi. (Or one half the compressor governor cutout pressure on older vehicles.) The warning is usually a red light. A buzzer may also come on.

Another type of warning is the “wig wag.” This device drops a mechanical arm into your view when the pressure in the system drops below 60 psi. An automatic wig wag will rise out of your view when the pressure in the system goes above 60 psi. The manual reset type must be placed in the “out of view” position manually. It will not stay in place until the pressure in the system is above 60 psi.

On large buses it is common for the low pressure warning devices to signal at 80-85 psi.

### ● Stop Light Switch

Drivers behind you must be warned when you put your brakes on. The air brake system does this with an electric switch that works by air pressure. The switch turns on the brake lights when you put on the air brakes.

### ● Front Brake Limiting Valve

Some older vehicles (made before 1975) have a front brake limiting valve and a control in the cab. The control is usually marked “normal” and “slippery.” When you put the control in the “slippery” position, the limiting valve cuts the “normal” air pressure to the front brakes by half. Limiting valves were used to reduce the chance of the front wheels skidding on slippery surfaces. However, they actually reduce the stopping power of the vehicle. Front wheel braking is good under all conditions. Tests have shown front wheel skids from braking are not likely even on ice. Make sure the control **is in the “normal” position to have normal stopping power.**

Many vehicles have automatic front wheel limiting valves. They reduce the air to the front brakes except when the brakes are put on very hard (60 psi or more application pressure). These valves cannot be controlled by the driver.

### ● Spring Brakes

All trucks, truck tractors, and buses must be equipped with emergency brakes and parking brakes. They must be held on by mechanical force (because air pressure can eventually leak away). Spring brakes are usually used to meet these needs. When driving, powerful springs are held back by air

pressure. If the air pressure is removed, the springs put on the brakes. A parking brake control in the cab allows the driver to let the air out of the spring brakes. This lets the springs put the brakes on. A leak in the air brake system which causes all the air to be lost will also cause the springs to put on the brakes.

Tractor and straight truck spring brakes will come fully on when air pressure drops to a range of 20 to 45 psi (typically 20 to 30 psi). Do not wait for the brakes to come on automatically. When the low air pressure warning light and buzzer first come on, bring the vehicle to a safe stop right away, while you can still control the brakes.

The braking power of spring brakes depends on the brakes being in adjustment. If the brakes are not adjusted properly, neither the regular brakes nor the emergency/parking brakes will work right.

### ● Parking Brake Controls

In newer vehicles with air brakes, you put on the parking brakes using a **diamond-shaped, yellow, push-pull control knob**. You pull the knob out to put the parking brakes (spring brakes) on, and push it in to release them. On older vehicles, the parking brakes may be controlled by a lever. Use the parking brakes whenever you park.

**Caution.** Never push the brake pedal down when the spring brakes are on. If you do, the brakes could be damaged by the combined forces of the springs and the air pressure. Many brake systems are designed so this will not happen. But not all systems are set up that way, and those that are may not always work. It is much better to develop the habit of not pushing the brake pedal down when the spring brakes are on.

**Modulating Control Valves.** In some vehicles a control handle on the dash board may be used to apply the spring brakes gradually. This is called a modulating valve. It is spring loaded so you have a feel for the braking action. The more you move the control lever, the harder the spring brakes come on. They work this way so you can control the spring brakes if the service brakes fail. When parking a vehicle with a modulating control valve, move the lever as far as it will go and hold it in place with the locking device.

**Dual Parking Control Valves.** When main air pressure is lost, the spring brakes come on. Some vehicles, such as buses, have a separate air tank which can be used to release the spring brakes. This is so you can move the vehicle in an emergency. One of the valves is a push-pull type and is used to put on the spring brakes for parking. The other valve is spring loaded in the “out” position. When you push the control in, air from the separate air tank releases the spring brakes so you can move. When you release the button, the spring brakes come on again. There is only enough air in the separate tank to do this a few times.

Therefore, plan carefully when moving. Otherwise, you may be stopped in a dangerous location when the separate air supply runs out.

Test Your Knowledge
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Why must air tanks be drained?</li><li>2. What is a supply pressure gauge used for?</li><li>3. All vehicles with air brakes must have a low air pressure warning signal. True or False?</li><li>4. What are spring brakes?</li><li>5. Front wheel brakes are good under all conditions. True or False?</li></ol>
These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Section 5.1.

## 5.2 DUAL AIR BRAKE

Most newer heavy-duty vehicles use dual air brake systems for safety. A dual air brake system has two separate air brake systems which use a single set of brake controls. Each system has its own air tanks, hoses, lines, etc. One system typically operates the regular brakes on the rear axle or axles. The other system operates the regular brakes on the front axle (and possibly one rear axle). Both systems supply air to the trailer (if there is one). The first system is called the “primary” system. The other is called the “secondary” system.

Before driving a vehicle with a dual air system, allow time for the air compressor to build up a minimum of 100 psi pressure in both the primary and secondary systems. Watch the primary and secondary air pressure gauges (or needles, if the system has two needles in one gauge). Pay attention to the low air pressure warning light and buzzer. The warning light and buzzer should shut off when air pressure in both systems rises to a value set by the manufacturer. This value must be greater than 60 psi.

The warning light and buzzer should come on before the air pressure drops below 60 psi in either system. If this happens while driving, you should stop right away and safely park the vehicle. If one air system is very low on pressure, either the front or the rear brakes will not be operating fully. This means it will take you longer to stop. Bring the vehicle to a safe stop and have the air brakes system fixed.

## 5.3 INSPECTING AIR BRAKE SYSTEMS

You should use the basic seven-step inspection procedure described in Section 2 to inspect your vehicle. There are more things to inspect on a vehicle with air brakes than one

without them. We discuss these things below, in the order that they fit into the seven-step method.

### • During Step 2 Engine Compartment Checks

**Check Air Compressor Drive Belt (if compressor is belt driven).** If the air compressor is belt-driven, check the condition and tightness of the belt. The belt should be in good condition.

### • During Step 5 Walkaround Inspecting

**Check Manual Slack Adjusters on S-cam Brakes.** Park on level ground and chock the wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving. Turn off the parking brakes so you can move the slack adjusters. Use gloves and pull hard on each slack adjuster that you can get to. If a slack adjuster moves more than about one inch where the push rod attaches to it, it probably needs adjustment. Adjust it or have it adjusted. Vehicles with too much brake slack can be very hard to stop. Out-of-adjustment brakes are the most common problem found in roadside inspections. Be safe. Check the slack adjusters.

**NOTE:** Automatic adjusters should not have to be manually adjusted except when performing maintenance on the brakes and during installation of the slack adjusters. The manual adjustment of automatic slack adjusters is dangerous because it gives the vehicle operator a false sense of security about the effectiveness of the braking system. In a vehicle equipped with automatic adjusters, when the pushrod stroke exceeds the legal brake adjustment limit, it is an indication that a mechanical problem exists in the adjuster itself, a problem with the related foundation brake components, or that the adjuster was improperly installed.

The manual adjustment of an automatic adjuster to bring a brake pushrod stroke within legal limits is generally masking a mechanical problem and is not fixing it; further, routine adjustment of most automatic adjusters will likely result in premature wear of the adjuster itself. It is recommended that when brakes equipped with automatic adjusters are found to be out of adjustment, the driver take the vehicle to a repair facility as soon as possible to have the problem corrected.

The manual adjustment of an automatic adjuster should only be used as a temporary measure to correct the adjustment in an emergency situation as it is likely the brake will soon be back out of adjustment since this procedure usually does not fix the underlying adjustment problem.

Automatic slack adjusters are made by different manufacturers and do not all operate the same. Therefore, the specific manufacturer's Service Manual should be consulted prior to troubleshooting a brake adjustment problem.

**Check Brake Drums (or Discs), Linings, and Hoses.** Brake drums (or discs) must not have cracks longer than one half the width of the friction area. Linings (friction material) must not be loose or soaked with oil or grease. They must not be dangerously thin. Mechanical parts must be in place, not broken or missing. Check the air hoses connected to the brake chambers to make sure they aren't cut or worn due to rubbing.

#### ● During Step 7 Final Air Brake Check

Do the following checks instead of the hydraulic brake check shown in Section Two "Step 7: Check Brake System."

**Test Air Leakage Rate.** With a fully-charged air system (typically 125 psi), turn off the engine, release the service brake, and time the air pressure drop. The loss rate should be less than two psi in one minute for single vehicles and less than three psi in one minute for combination vehicles. Then apply 90 psi or more with the brake pedal. After the initial pressure drop, if the air pressure falls more than three psi in one minute for single vehicles more than four psi for combination vehicles, the air loss rate is too much. Check for air leaks and fix before driving the vehicle. Otherwise, you could lose your brakes while driving.

**Test Low Pressure Warning Signal.** Shut the engine off when you have enough air pressure so that the low pressure warning signal is not on. Turn the electrical power on and step on and off the brake pedal to reduce air tank pressure. The low air pressure warning signal must come on before the pressure drops to less than 60 psi in the air tank (or tank with the lowest air pressure, in dual air systems).

If the warning signal doesn't work, you could lose air pressure and you would not know it. This could cause sudden emergency braking in a single circuit air system. In dual systems the stopping distance will be increased. Only limited braking can be done before the spring brakes come on.

**Check That the Spring Brakes Come on Automatically.** Chock the wheels, release the parking brakes when you have enough air pressure to do it, and shut the engine off. Step on and off the brake pedal to reduce the air tank pressure. The "parking brake" knob should pop out when the air pressure falls to the manufacturer's specification (usually in a range between 20-40 psi). This causes the spring brakes to come on.

**Check Rate of Air Pressure Buildup.** When the engine is at operating rpm, the pressure should build from 85 to 100 psi within 45 seconds in dual air systems. (If the vehicle has larger than minimum air tanks, the buildup time can be longer and still be safe. Check the manufacturer's specifications.) In single air systems (pre-1975), typical requirements are pressure buildup from 50 to 90 psi within three minutes with the engine at an idle speed of 600-900 rpm.

If air pressure does not build up fast enough, your pressure may drop too low during driving, requiring an emergency stop. Don't drive until you get the problem fixed.

**Check Air Compressor Governor Cut-in and Cut-out Pressures.** Pumping by the air compressor should start at about 100 psi and stop at about 125 psi. (Check manufacturer's specifications). Run the engine at a fast idle. The air governor should cut-out the air compressor at about the manufacturer's specified pressure. The air pressure shown by your gauge(s) will stop rising. With the engine idling, step on and off the brake to reduce the air tank pressure. The compressor should cut-in at about the manufacturer's specified cut-in pressure. The pressure should begin to rise.

If the air governor does not work as described above, it may need to be fixed. A governor that does not work properly may not keep enough air pressure for safe driving.

**Test Parking Brake.** Stop the vehicle, put the parking brake on, and gently pull against it in a low gear to test that the parking brake will hold.

**Test Service Brakes.** Wait for normal air pressure, release the parking brake, move the vehicle forward slowly (about five mph), and apply the brakes firmly using the brake pedal. Note any vehicle "pulling" to one side, unusual feel, or delayed stopping action.

This test may show you problems which you otherwise wouldn't know about until you needed the brakes on the road

Test Your Knowledge
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. What is a dual air brake system?</li><li>2. What are the slack adjusters?</li><li>3. How can you check slack adjusters?</li><li>4. How can you test the low pressure warning signal?</li><li>5. What can you check that the spring brakes come on automatically?</li><li>6. What are the maximum leakage rates?</li></ol>
These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Sections 5.2 and 5.3.

## 5.4 USING AIR BRAKES

### ● Normal Stops

Push the brake pedal down. Control the pressure so the vehicle comes to a smooth, safe stop. If you have a manual transmission, don't push the clutch in until the engine rpm is down close to idle. When stopped, select a starting gear.



## ● Emergency Stops

If somebody suddenly pulls out in front of you, your natural response is to hit the brakes. This is a good response if there's enough distance to stop and you use the brakes correctly.

You should brake in a way that will keep your vehicle in a straight line and allow you to turn if it becomes necessary. You can use the "controlled braking" method or the "stab braking" method.

**Controlled Braking.** With this method, you apply the brakes as hard as you can **without** locking the wheels. Keep steering wheel movements very small while doing this. If you need to make a larger steering adjustment, or if the wheels lock, release the brakes. Reapply the brakes as soon as you can.

### Stab Braking.

- Apply your brakes all the way.
- Release brakes when wheels lock up.
- As soon as the wheels start rolling, apply the brakes fully again. (It can take up to one second for the wheels to start rolling after you release the brakes. If you re-apply the brakes before the wheels start rolling, the vehicle won't straighten out.)

**Note: If you drive a vehicle with anti-lock brakes, you should read and follow the directions found in the owner's manual for stopping quickly.**

## ● Stopping Distance

We talked about stopping distance in Section 2 under "Speed and Stopping Distance." With air brakes there is an added delay: the time required for the brakes to work after the brake pedal is pushed. With hydraulic brakes (used on cars and light/medium trucks), the brakes work instantly. However, with air brakes, it takes a little time (one half second or more) for the air to flow through the lines to the brakes. Thus, the total stopping distance for vehicles with air brake systems is made up of four different factors.

	Perception Distance
+	Reaction Distance
+	Brake Lag Distance
+	Effective Braking Distance
<hr/>	
=	Total Stopping Distance

The air brake lag distance at 55 mph on dry pavement adds about 32 feet. So at 55 mph for an average driver under good traction and brake conditions, the total stopping distance is over 300 feet. This is longer than a football field.

## ● Brake Fading or Failure

Brakes are designed so brake shoes or pads rub against the brake drum or disks to slow the vehicle. Braking creates heat, but brakes are designed to take a lot of heat. However, brakes can fade or fail from excessive heat caused by using them too much and not relying on the engine braking effect.

Excessive use of the service brakes results in overheating and leads to brake fade. Brake fade results from excessive heat causing chemical changes in the brake lining which reduce friction and also causes expansion of the brake drums. As the overheated drums expand, the brake shoes and linings have to move farther to contact the drums, and the force of this contact is also reduced. Continued overuse may increase brake fade until the vehicle cannot be slowed down or stopped at all.

Brake fade is also affected by adjustment. To safely control a vehicle, every brake must do its share of the work. Brakes out of adjustment will stop doing their share before those that are in adjustment. The other brakes can then overheat and fade and there will not be sufficient braking available to control the vehicle(s). Brakes can get out of adjustment quickly, especially when they are hot. Therefore, brake adjustment must be checked frequently.

## ● Proper Braking Technique

Remember: The use of brakes on a long and/or steep downgrade is only a supplement to the braking effect of the engine. Once the vehicle is in the proper low gear, the following is the proper braking technique:

- Apply the brakes just hard enough to feel a definite slowdown.
- When your speed has been reduced to approximately five mph below your "safe" speed, release the brakes. [This brake application should last for about three seconds.]
- When your speed has increased to your "safe" speed, repeat steps 1 and 2.

For example, if your "safe" speed is 40 mph, you would not apply the brakes until your speed reaches 40 mph. You now apply the brakes hard enough to gradually reduce your speed to 35 mph and then release the brakes. Repeat this as often as necessary until you have reached the end of the downgrade.

## ● Low Air Pressure

If the low air pressure warning comes on, stop and safely park your **vehicle as soon as possible**. There might be an air leak in the system. Controlled braking is possible only



while enough air remains in the air tanks. The spring brakes will come on when the air pressure drops into the range of 20 to 45 psi. A heavily loaded vehicle will take a long distance to stop because the spring brakes do not work on all axles. Lightly loaded vehicles or vehicles on slippery roads may skid out of control when the spring brakes come on. It is much safer to stop while there is enough air in the tanks to use the foot brakes.

#### ● **Parking Brakes**

**Any time you park, use the parking brakes,** except as noted below. Pull the parking brake control knob out to apply the parking brakes, push it in to release them. The control will be a yellow, diamondshaped knob labeled “parking brakes” on newer vehicles. On older vehicles, it may be a round blue knob or some other shape (including a lever that swings from side to side or up and down).

Don’t use the parking brakes if the brakes are very hot (from just having come down a steep grade), or if the brakes are very wet in freezing temperatures. If they are used while they are very hot, they can be damaged by the heat. If they are used in freezing temperatures when the brakes are very wet, they can freeze so the vehicle cannot move. Use wheel chocks to hold the vehicle. Let hot brakes cool before using the parking brakes. If the brakes are wet, use the brakes lightly while driving in a low gear to heat and dry them.

If your vehicle does not have automatic air tank drains, drain your air tanks at the end of each working day to remove moisture and oil. Otherwise, the brakes could fail.

Never leave your vehicle unattended without applying the parking brakes or chocking the wheels. Your vehicle might roll away and cause injury and damage.

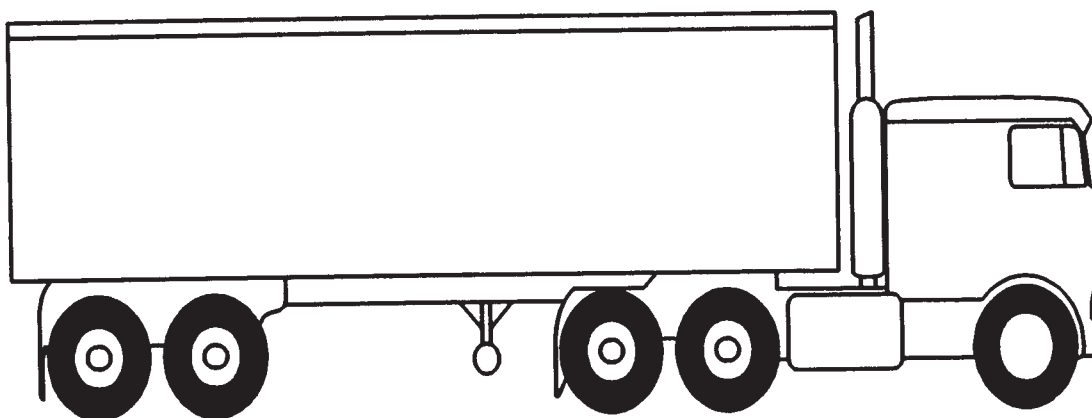
<b>Test Your Knowledge</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Why should you be in the proper gear before starting down a hill?</li><li>2. What factors can cause brakes to fade or fail?</li><li>3. The use of brakes on a long steep downgrade is only a supplement to the braking effect of the engine. True or False?</li><li>4. If you are away from your vehicle only a short time, you don’t need to use the parking brake. True or False?</li><li>5. How often should you drain air tanks?</li></ol>
<p>These questions may be on your test. If you can’t answer them all, re-read Section 5.4.</p>

---

## Section 6

---

### Combination Vehicles



THIS SECTION IS FOR DRIVERS NEEDING  
A CLASS "A" COMMERCIAL DRIVER LICENSE

# Section 6: Combination Vehicles

## This Section Covers

- Driving Combinations
- Combination Vehicle Air Brakes
- Inspecting Combinations

This section provides information needed to pass the tests for combination vehicles (tractor-trailer, doubles, triples, straight truck, and trailer). The information is only to give you the minimum knowledge needed for driving common combination vehicles. You should also study Section 7 if you need to pass the tests for doubles-triples.

### 6.1 DRIVING COMBINATION VEHICLES SAFELY

Combination vehicles are usually heavier, longer, and require more driving skill than single commercial vehicles. This means that drivers of combination vehicles need more knowledge and skill than drivers of single vehicles. In this section, we talk about some important safety factors that apply specifically to combination vehicles.

#### • Rollover Risks

More than half of truck driver deaths in crashes are the result of truck rollovers. When more cargo is piled up in a truck, the “center of gravity” moves higher up from the road. The truck becomes easier to turn over. Fully loaded rigs are ten times more likely to roll over in a crash than empty rigs.

The following two things will help you prevent rollover: **keep the cargo as close to the ground as possible, and drive slowly around turns.** Keeping cargo low is even more important in combination vehicles than in straight trucks. Also, keep the load centered on your rig. If the load is to one side so it makes a trailer lean, a rollover is more likely. Make sure your cargo is centered and spread out as much as possible. Cargo distribution is covered in Section 3 of this manual.

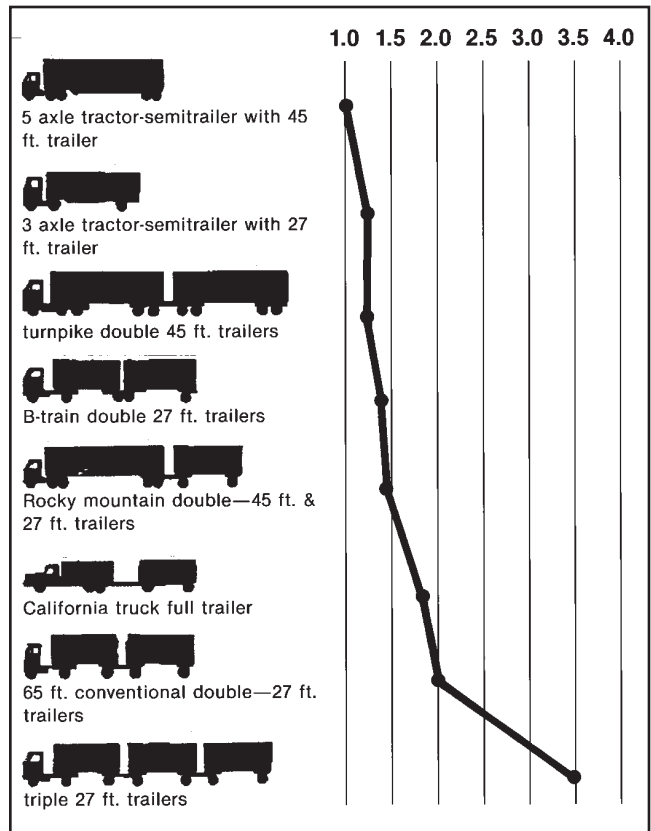
Rollovers happen when you turn too fast. Drive slowly around corners, on ramps, and off ramps. Avoid quick lane changes, especially when fully loaded.

#### • Steer Gently

Trucks with trailers have a dangerous “crack-the-whip” effect. When you make a quick lane change, the crack-the-whip effect can turn the trailer over. There are many accidents where only the trailer has overturned.

“Rearward amplification” causes the crack-the-whip effect. Figure 6-1 shows eight types of combination vehicles and the rearward amplification each has in a quick lane change. Rigs with the least crack-the-whip effect are shown at the top and those with the most, at the bottom. Rearward amplification of 2.0 in the chart means that the rear trailer is twice as likely to turn over as the tractor. You can see that triples have a rearward amplification of 3.5. This means you can roll the last trailer of triples 3.5 times as easily as a five-axle tractor-semi.

Figure 6-1--Influence of Combination on Rearward Amplification



(from R.D. Ervin, R.L. Nisonger, C.C. MacAdams, and P.S. Fancher, “Influence of size and weight variables on the stability and control properties of heavy trucks,” University of Michigan Transportation Research Institute, 1983.)

Steer gently and smoothly when you are pulling trailers. If you make a sudden movement with your steering wheel, your trailer could tip over. Follow far enough behind other vehicles (at least one second for each ten feet of your vehicle length, plus another second if going over 40 mph). Look far enough behind other vehicles (at least one second for each ten feet of your vehicle length, plus another second if going over 40 mph). Look far enough down the road to avoid

being surprised and having to make a sudden lane change. At night, drive slowly enough to see obstacles with your headlights before it is too late to change lanes or stop gently. Slow down to a safe speed **before** going into a turn.

- **Brake Early**

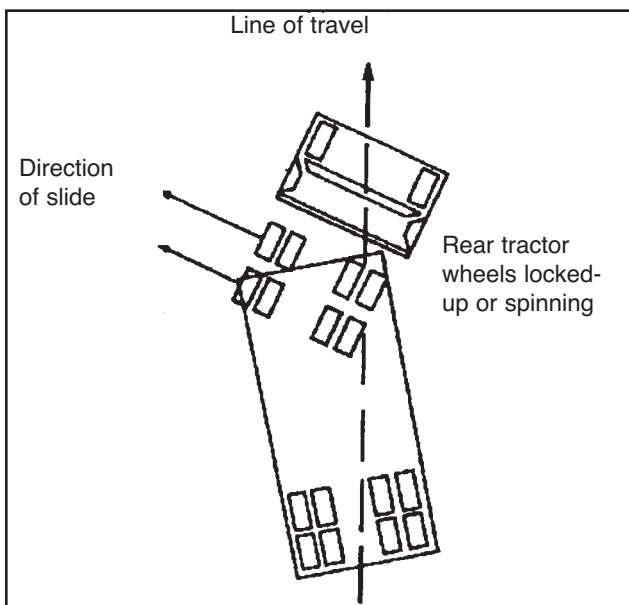
Control your speed whether fully loaded or empty. Large combination vehicles take longer to stop when they are empty than when they are fully loaded. When lightly loaded, the very stiff suspension springs and strong brakes give poor traction and make it very easy to lock up the wheels. Your trailer can swing out and strike other vehicles. Your tractor can jackknife very quickly (Figure 6-2). You also must be very careful about driving “bobtail” tractors (tractors without semitrailers). Tests have shown that bobtails can be very hard to stop smoothly. It takes them longer to stop than a tractor-semitrailer loaded to maximum gross weight.

In any combination rig, allow lots of following distance and look far ahead, so you can brake early. Don’t be caught by surprise and have to make a “panic” stop.

- **Prevent Trailer Skids**

When the wheels of a trailer lock up, the trailer will tend to swing around. This is more likely to happen when the trailer is empty or lightly loaded. This type of jackknife is often called a “trailer jackknife.” This is shown in Figure 6-3.

Figure 6-2--Tractor Jackknife



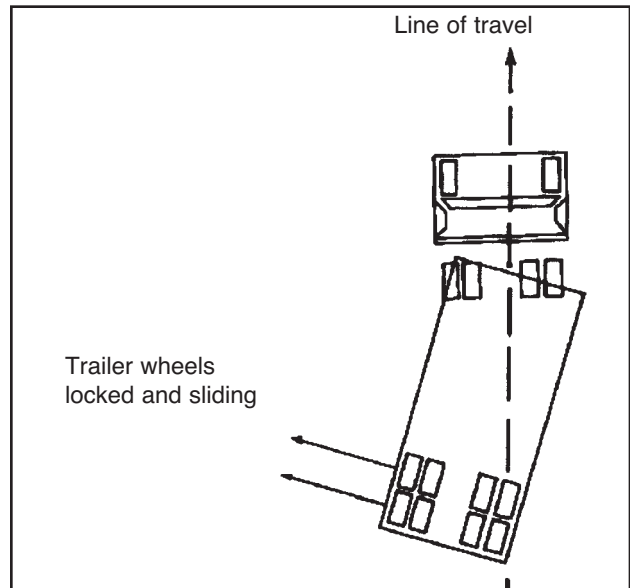
The procedure for stopping a trailer skid is as follows:

**Recognize the Skid.** The earliest and best way to recognize that the trailer has started to skid is by seeing it in your

mirrors. Any time you apply the brakes hard, check the mirrors to make sure the trailer is staying where it should be. Once the trailer swings out of your lane, it’s very difficult to prevent a jackknife.

**Stop Using the Brake.** Release the brakes to get traction back. Do not use the trailer hand brake (if you have one) to “straighten out the rig.” This is the wrong thing to do since the brakes on the trailer wheels caused the skid in the first place. Once the trailer wheels grip the road again, the trailer will start to follow the tractor and straighten out.

Figure 6-3--Trailer Jackknife



- **Turn Wide**

When a vehicle goes around a corner, the rear wheels follow a different path than the front wheels. This is called offtracking or “cheating.” Figure 6-4 shows how offtracking causes the path followed by a tractor-semi to be wider than the rig itself. Longer vehicles will offtrack more. The rear wheels of the powered unit (truck or tractor) will offtrack some, and the rear wheels of the trailer will offtrack even more. If there is more than one trailer, the rear wheels of the last trailer will offtrack the most. Steer the front end wide enough around a corner so the rear end does not run over the curb, pedestrians, other vehicles, etc. However, keep the rear of your vehicle close to the curb. This will stop other drivers from passing you on the right. If you cannot complete your turn without entering another traffic lane, turn wide as you complete the turn (Figure 6.5). This is better than swinging wide to the left before starting the turn because it will keep other drivers from passing you on the right. If drivers pass on the right, you might collide with them when you turn.

Figure 6-4--Offtracking in a 90-degree turn

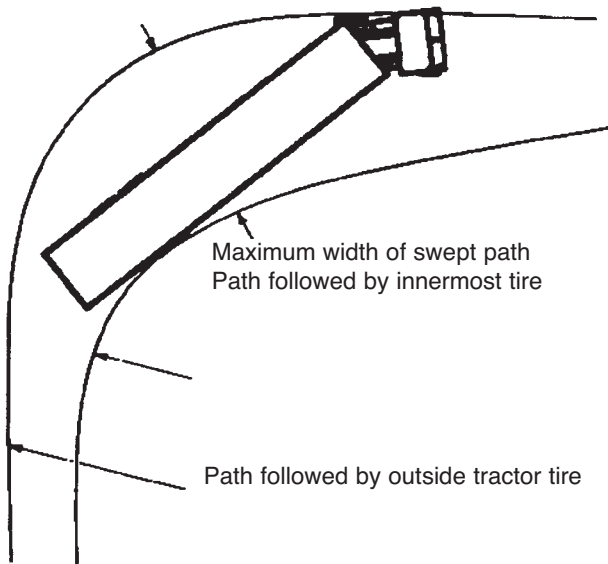


Figure 6-5--Do this so cars don't try to pass you on the right.

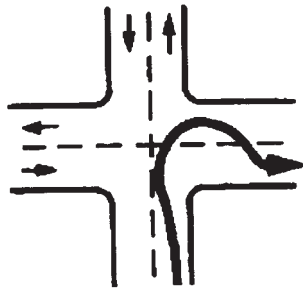
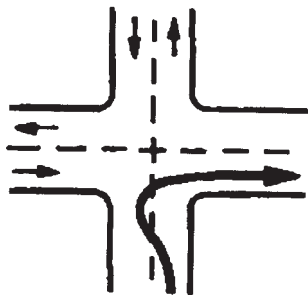


Figure 6-6--Don't do this



## Test Your Knowledge

1. What two things are important to prevent rollover?
2. When you turn suddenly while pulling doubles, which trailer is most likely to turn over?
3. Why should you not use the trailer hand brake to straighten out a jackknifing trailer?
4. What is offtracking?
5. Why should you turn like it shows in Figure 6-5?

These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Section 6.1.

## 6.2 COMBINATION VEHICLE AIR BRAKES

You should study "Section 5: Single Vehicle Air Brakes" before reading this. In combination vehicles the braking system has parts to control the trailer brakes, in addition to the parts described in Section 5. These parts are described below:

### • Trailer Hand Valve

The trailer hand valve (also called the trolley valve or Johnson bar) works the trailer brakes. The trailer hand valve should be used only to test the trailer brakes. Do not use it in driving because of the danger of making the trailer skid. The foot brake sends air to all of the brakes on the vehicle (including the trailer[s]). There is much less danger of causing a skid or jackknife when using just the foot brake.

Never use the hand valve for parking because all the air might leak out, unlocking the brakes in trailers that don't have spring brakes. Always use the parking brakes when parking. If the trailer does not have spring brakes, use wheel chocks to keep the trailer from moving.

### • Tractor Protection Valve

The tractor protection valve keeps air in the tractor or truck should the trailer break away or develop a bad leak. The tractor protection valve is controlled by the "trailer air supply" control valve in the cab. The control valve allows you to open and shut the tractor protection valve. The tractor protection valve will close automatically if air pressure is low (in the range of 20 to 45 psi). When the tractor protection valve closes, it stops any air from going out of the tractor. It also lets the air out of the trailer emergency line. This causes the trailer emergency brakes to come on. Emergency brakes are covered later.

### • Trailer Air Supply Control

The trailer air supply control on newer vehicles is a red eight-sided knob which you use to control the tractor protection valve. You push it in to supply the trailer with air, and

pull it out to shut the air off and put on the trailer emergency brakes. The valve will pop out (thus closing the tractor protection valve) when the air pressure drops into the range of 20 to 45 psi. Tractor protection valve controls or “emergency” valves on older vehicles may not operate automatically. There may be a lever rather than a knob. The “normal” position is used for pulling a trailer. The “emergency” position is used to shut the air off and put on the trailer emergency brakes.

#### ● Trailer Air Lines

Every combination vehicle has two air lines, the service line and the emergency line. They run between each vehicle (tractor to trailer, trailer to dolly, dolly to second trailer, etc.).

**Service Air Line.** The service line (also called the control line or signal line) carries air which is controlled by the foot brake or the trailer hand brake. Depending on how hard you press the foot brake or hand valve, the pressure in the service line will similarly change. The service line is connected to **relay valves**. These valves allow the trailer brakes to be applied more quickly than would otherwise be possible.

**Emergency Air Line.** The emergency line (also called the supply line) has two purposes. First, it supplies air to the trailer air tanks. Second, the emergency line controls the emergency brakes on combination vehicles. **Loss of air pressure** in the emergency line causes the trailer emergency brakes to come on. The pressure loss could be caused by a trailer breaking loose, thus tearing apart the emergency air hose. Or it could be caused by a hose, metal tubing, or other part which breaks, letting the air out. When the emergency line loses pressure, it also causes the tractor protection valve to close (the air supply knob will pop out).

Emergency lines are often coded with the color **red** (red hose, red couplers, or other parts) to keep from getting them mixed up with the **blue** service line.

#### ● Hose Couplers (Glad Hands)

Glad hands are coupling devices used to connect the service and emergency air lines from the truck or tractor to the trailer. The couplers have a rubber seal which prevents air from escaping. Clean the couplers and rubber seals before a connection is made. When connecting the glad hands, press the two seals together with the couplers at a 90 degree angle to each other. A turn of the glad hand attached to the hose will join and lock the couplers.

Some vehicles have “dead end” or dummy couplers to which the hoses may be attached when they are not in use. This will prevent water and dirt from getting into the coupler and the air lines. Use the dummy couplers when the air lines are not connected to a trailer. If there are no dummy couplers,

the glad hands can sometimes be locked together (depending on the couplings). It is very important to keep the air supply clean.

When coupling, make sure to couple the proper glad hands together. To help avoid mistakes, colors are sometimes used. Blue is used for the service lines and red for the emergency (supply) lines. Sometimes, metal tags are attached to the lines with the words “service” and “emergency” stamped on them.

If you do cross the air lines, supply air will be sent to the service line instead of going to charge the trailer air tanks. Air will not be available to release the trailer spring brakes (parking brakes). If the spring brakes don’t release when you push the trailer air supply control, check the air line connections.

Older trailers do not have spring brakes. If the air supply in the trailer air tank has leaked away there will be no emergency brakes, and the trailer wheels will turn freely. If you crossed the air lines, you could drive away but you wouldn’t have trailer brakes. **This would be very dangerous.** Always test the trailer brakes before driving with the hand valve or by pulling the air supply (tractor protection valve) control. Pull gently against them in a low gear to make sure the brakes work.

#### ● Trailer Air Tanks

Each trailer and converter dolly has one or more air tanks. They are filled by the **emergency (supply) line** from the tractor. They provide the air pressure used to operate trailer brakes. Air pressure is sent from the air tanks to the brakes by relay valves. The pressure in the **service line** tells how much pressure the relay valves should send to the trailer brakes. The pressure in the service line is controlled by the brake pedal (and the trailer hand brake).

It is important that you don’t let water and oil build up in the air tanks. If you do, the brakes may not work correctly. Each tank has a drain valve on it and you should drain each tank every day. If your tanks have automatic drains, they will keep most moisture out. But you should still open the drains to make sure.

#### ● Shut-Off Valves

Shut-off valves (also called cut-out cocks) are used in the service and supply air lines at the back of trailers used to tow other trailers. These valves permit closing the air lines off when another trailer is not being towed. You must check that all shut-off valves are in the open position except the ones at the back of the last trailer, which must be **closed**.



## ● Trailer Service, Parking and Emergency Brakes

Newer trailers have spring brakes just like trucks and truck tractors. However, converter dollies and trailers built before 1975 are not required to have spring brakes. Those that do not have spring brakes have emergency brakes which work from the air stored in the trailer air tank. The emergency brakes come on whenever air pressure in the emergency line is lost. **These trailers have no parking brake.** The emergency brakes come on whenever the air supply knob is pulled out or the trailer is disconnected. But the brakes will hold only as long as there is air pressure in the trailer air tank. Eventually, the air will leak away and then there will be no brakes. Therefore, **it is very important for safety that you use wheel chocks when you park trailers without spring brakes.**

A major leak in the **emergency** line will cause the tractor protection valve to close and the trailer emergency brakes to come on.

You may not notice a major leak in the service line until you try to put the brakes on. Then, the air loss from the leak will lower the air tank pressure quickly. If it goes low enough, the trailer emergency brakes will come on.

### Test Your Knowledge

1. Why should you not use the trailer hand valve while driving?
2. Describe what the trailer air supply control does.
3. Describe what the service line is for.
4. What is the emergency air line for?
5. Why should you use chocks when parking a trailer without spring brakes?
6. Where are shut-off valves?

These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Section 6.2.

## 6.3 COUPLING AND UNCOUPLING

Knowing how to couple and uncouple correctly is basic to safe operation of combination vehicles. Wrong coupling and uncoupling can be very dangerous. General coupling and uncoupling steps are listed below. There are differences between different rigs, so learn the details of coupling and uncoupling the truck(s) you will operate.

### ● Coupling Tractor-Semitrailers

#### Step 1. Inspect Fifth Wheel

- Check for damaged/missing parts.

- Check to see that mounting to tractor is secure, no cracks in frame, etc.
- Be sure that the fifth wheel plate is greased as required. Failure to keep the fifth wheel plate lubricated could cause steering problems because of friction between the tractor and trailer.
- Check if fifth wheel is in proper position for coupling.
  - Wheel tilted down towards rear of tractor.
  - Jaws open.
  - Safety unlocking handle in the automatic lock position.
- If you have a sliding fifth wheel, make sure it is locked.
- Make sure the trailer kingpin is not bent or broken.

#### Step 2. Inspect Area and Chock Wheels

- Make sure area around the vehicle is clear.
- Be sure trailer wheels are chocked or spring brakes are on.
- Check that cargo (if any) is secured against movement due to tractor being coupled to the trailer.

#### Step 3. Position Tractor

- Put the tractor directly in front of the trailer. (Never back under the trailer at an angle because you might push the trailer sideways and break the landing gear).
- Check position, using outside mirrors, by looking down both sides of the trailer.

#### Step 4. Back Slowly

- Back until fifth wheel just touches the trailer.
- Don't hit the trailer.

#### Step 5. Secure Tractor

- Put on the parking brake.
- Put transmission in neutral.

#### Step 6. Check Trailer Height

- The trailer should be low enough that it is raised slightly by the tractor when the tractor is backed under it. Raise or lower the trailer as needed. (If the trailer is too low, the tractor may strike and damage the nose of the trailer; if the trailer is too high, it may not couple correctly).

- Check that the kingpin and fifth wheel are aligned.

### Step 7. Connect Air Lines to Trailer

- Check glad hand seals and connect tractor emergency air line to trailer emergency glad hand.
- Check glad hand seals and connect tractor service air line to trailer service glad hand.
- Make sure air lines are safely supported where they won't be crushed or caught while tractor is backing under the trailer.

### Step 8. Supply Air to Trailer

- From cab, push in "air supply" knob or move tractor protection valve control from the "emergency" to the "normal" position to supply air to the trailer brake system.
- Wait until the air pressure is normal.
- Check brake system for crossed air lines.
  - Shut engine off so you can hear the brakes.
  - Apply and release trailer brakes and listen for sound of trailer brakes being applied and released. You should hear the brakes move when applied and air escape when the brakes are released.
  - Check air brake system pressure gauge for signs of major air loss.
- When you are sure trailer brakes are working, start engine.
- Make sure air pressure is up to normal.

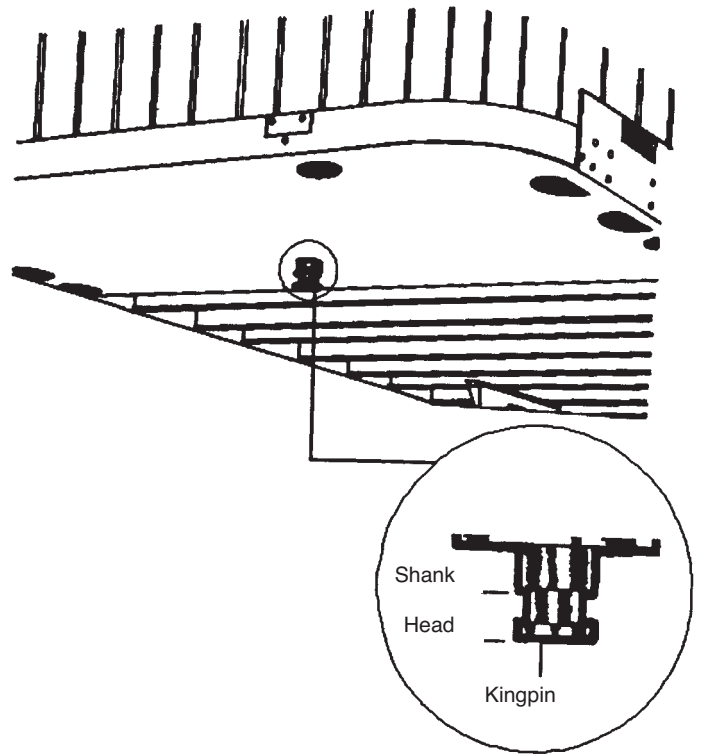
### Step 9. Lock Trailer Brakes

- Pull out the "air supply" knob or move the tractor protection valve control from "normal" to "emergency."

### Step 10. Back Under Trailer

- Use lowest reverse gear.
- Back tractor slowly under trailer to avoid hitting the kingpin too hard.
- Stop when the kingpin is locked into the fifth wheel.

Figure 6-7--Trailer Kingpin



### Step 11. Check Connection for Security

- Raise trailer landing gear slightly off ground.
- Pull tractor gently forward while the trailer brakes are still locked to check that the trailer is locked onto the tractor.

### Step 12. Secure Vehicle

- Put transmission in neutral.
- Put parking brakes on.
- Shut off engine and take key with you so someone else won't move truck while you are under it.

### Step 13. Inspect Coupling

- Use a flashlight, if necessary.
- Make sure there is no space between upper and lower fifth wheel. If there is space, something is wrong (kingpin may be on top of closed fifth wheel jaws; trailer would come loose very easily).
- Go under trailer and look into the back of the fifth wheel. Make sure the fifth wheel jaws have closed around the shank of the kingpin (see Figure 6-7).

- Check that the locking lever is in the “lock” position.
- Check that the safety latch is in position over locking lever. (On some fifth wheels the catch must be put in place by hand.)
- If the coupling isn’t right, don’t drive the coupled unit; get it fixed.

#### **Step 14. Connect the Electrical Cord and Check Air Lines**

- Plug the electrical cord into the trailer and fasten the safety catch.
- Check both air lines and electrical line for signs of damage.
- Make sure air and electrical lines will not hit any moving parts of vehicle.

#### **Step 15. Raise Front Trailer Supports (Landing Gear)**

- Use low gear range, if so equipped, to begin raising the landing gear. Once free of weight, switch to the high gear range.
- Raise the landing gear all the way up. Never drive with landing gear only part way up, as it may catch on railroad tracks or other things.
- After raising landing gear, secure the crank handle safely.
- When full weight of trailer is resting on tractor:
  - Check for enough clearance between rear of tractor frame and landing gear. When tractor turns sharply, it must not hit landing gear.
  - Check that there is enough clearance between the top of the tractor tires and the nose of the trailer.

#### **Step 16. Remove Trailer Wheel Chocks**

- Remove and store wheel chocks in a safe place.

#### **● Uncoupling Tractor-Semi-trailer**

The following steps will help you to uncouple safely:

#### **Step 1. Position Rig**

- Make sure surface of parking area can support weight of trailer.
- Have tractor lined up with the trailer. Pulling out at an angle can damage landing gear.

#### **Step 2. Ease Pressure on Locking Jaws**

- Shut off trailer air supply to lock trailer brakes.
- Ease pressure on fifth wheel locking jaws by backing up gently. This will help you release the fifth wheel locking lever.
- Put parking brakes on while tractor is pushing against the kingpin. This will hold rig with pressure off the locking jaws.

#### **Step 3. Chock Trailer Wheels**

- Chock the trailer wheels if the trailer doesn’t have spring brakes, or if you’re not sure. The air could leak out of the trailer air tank, releasing its emergency brakes. Without chocks, the trailer could move.

#### **Step 4. Lower The Landing Gear**

- If trailer is empty--lower the landing gear until it makes firm contact with the ground.
- If trailer is loaded, after the landing gear makes firm contact with the ground, turn crank in low gear a few extra turns. This will lift some weight off the tractor. Do not lift trailer off the fifth wheel. This will:
  - Make it easier to unlatch fifth wheel.
  - Make it easier to couple next time.

#### **Step 5. Disconnect Air Lines and Electrical Cable**

- Disconnect air lines from trailer. Connect air line glad hands to dummy couplers at back of cab or couple them together.
- Hang electrical cable with plug down to prevent moisture from entering it.
- Make sure lines are supported so they won’t be damaged while driving the tractor.

#### **Step 6. Unlock Fifth Wheel**

- Raise the release handle lock.
- Pull the release handle to “open” position.
- Keep legs and feet clear of the rear tractor wheels to avoid serious injury in case the vehicle moves.

#### **Step 7. Pull Tractor Partially Clear of Trailer**

- Pull tractor forward until fifth wheel comes out from under the trailer.
- Stop with tractor frame under trailer (prevents trailer from falling to ground if landing gear should collapse or sink).

## Step 8. Secure Tractor

- Apply parking brake.
- Place transmission in neutral.

## Step 9. Inspect Trailer Supports

- Make sure ground is supporting trailer.
- Make sure landing gear is not damaged.

## Step 10. Pull Tractor Clear of Trailer

- Release parking brakes.
- Check the area and drive tractor forward until it clears.

### Test Your Knowledge

1. What might happen if the trailer is too high when you try to couple?
2. After coupling, how much space should be between the upper and lower fifth wheel?
3. You should look into the back of the fifth wheel to see if it is locked onto the kingpin. True or False.
4. To drive you need to raise the landing gear only until it just lifts off the pavement. True or False?
5. What is a converter dolly?

These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Section 6.3.

## 6.4 INSPECTING A COMBINATION VEHICLE

Use the seven-step inspection procedure described in Section 2 to inspect your combination vehicle. There are more things to inspect on a combination vehicle than on a single vehicle. (For example, tires, wheels, lights, reflectors, etc.). However, there are also some new things to check. These are discussed below.

Do these checks in addition to those already listed in Section 2, "Step 5: Do Walk-around Inspection."

- Additional Things to Check During a Walk-around Inspection:

### Coupling System Areas

- Check fifth wheel (lower).
  - Securely mounted to frame.
  - No missing, damaged parts.
  - Enough grease.

- No visible space between upper and lower fifth wheel.
- Locking jaws around the shank, not the head of kingpin.
- Release arm properly seated and safety latch/lock engaged.

- Fifth wheel (upper).
  - Glide plate securely mounted to trailer frame.
  - Kingpin not damaged.
- Air and electric lines to trailer.
  - Electrical cord firmly plugged in and secured.
  - Air lines properly connected to glad hands, no air leaks, properly secured with enough slack for turns.
  - All lines free from damage.
- Sliding fifth wheel.
  - Slide not damaged or parts missing.
  - Properly greased.
  - All locking pins present and locked in place.
  - If air powered -- no air leaks.
  - Check that fifth wheel is not so far forward that tractor frame will hit landing gear or the cab hit the trailer, during turns.

### Landing Gear

- Fully raised, no missing parts, not bent or otherwise damaged.
- Crank handle in place and secured.
- If power operated, no air or hydraulic leaks.

### ● Combination Vehicle Brake Check

Do these checks in addition to Section 5.3, Inspecting Air Brake Systems.

The following section explains how to check air brakes on combination vehicles. Check the brakes on a double or triple trailer as you would any combination vehicle.

**Check That Air Flows to All Trailers.** Use the tractor parking brake and/or chock the wheels to hold the vehicle. Wait for air pressure to reach normal, then push in the red "trailer air supply" knob. This will supply air to the emergency (supply) lines. Use the trailer hand brake to provide air to the service line. Go to the rear of the rig. Open the emergency line shut-off valve at the rear of the last trailer. You should hear air escaping, showing the entire system is charged. Close the emergency line valve. Open the service line valve to check that service pressure goes through all the trailers (this test assumes that the trailer hand brake or the service brake pedal is on), then close the valve. If you do NOT hear air escaping from both lines, check that the shut-off valves on the trailer(s) and dolly(s) are in the OPEN position. You

MUST have air all the way to the back for all the brakes to work.

**Test Tractor Protection Valve.** Charge the trailer air brake system. That is, build up normal air pressure and push the “air supply” knob in. Shut the engine off. Step on and off the brake pedal several times to reduce the air pressure in the tanks. The trailer air supply control (also called the tractor protection valve control) should pop out (or go from “normal” to “emergency” position) when the air pressure falls into the pressure range specified by the manufacturer. (Usually within the range of 20 to 45 psi).

If the tractor protection valve doesn’t work right, an air hose or trailer brake leak could drain all the air from the tractor. This would cause the emergency brakes to come on, with possible loss of control.

**Test Trailer Emergency Brakes.** Charge the trailer air brake system and check that the trailer rolls freely. Then stop and pull out the trailer air supply control (also called tractor protection valve control) or trailer emergency valve or place it in the “emergency” position. Pull gently on the trailer with the tractor to check that the trailer emergency brakes are on.

**Test Trailer Service Brakes.** Check for normal air pressure, release the parking brakes, move the vehicle forward slowly, and apply trailer brakes with the hand control trolley valve, if so equipped. You should feel the brakes come on. This tells you the trailer brakes are connected and working. The trailer brakes should be tested with the hand valve but controlled in normal operation with the foot pedal, which applies air to the service brakes at all wheels.

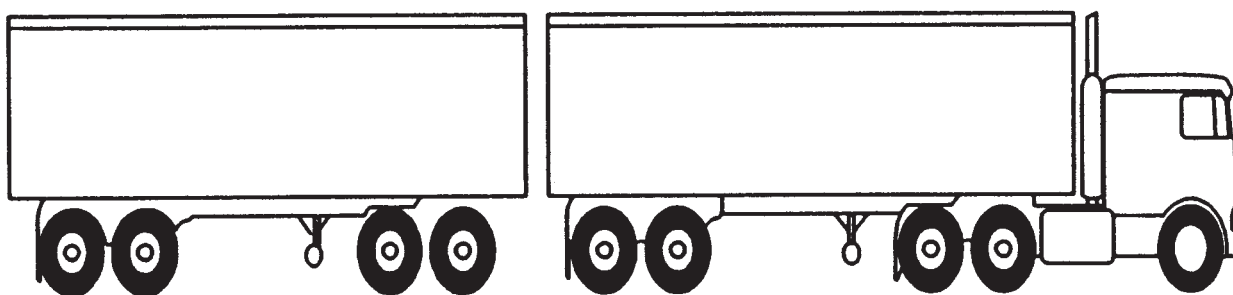
Test Your Knowledge
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Which shut-off valves should be open and which closed?</li><li>2. How can you test that air flows to all trailers?</li><li>3. How can you test the tractor protection valve?</li><li>4. How can you test the trailer emergency brakes?</li><li>5. How can you test the trailer service brakes?</li></ol>
These questions may be on your test. If you can’t answer them all, re-read Section 6.4.

---

## Section 7

---

### Doubles and Triples



THIS SECTION IS FOR DRIVERS WHO  
WILL TOW DOUBLE OR TRIPLE TRAILERS



# Section 7: Doubles and Triples

## This Section Covers

- **Pulling Double/Triple Trailers**
- **Coupling & Uncoupling**
- **Inspecting Doubles and Triples**
- **Checking Air Brakes**

This section has information you need to pass the CDL knowledge test for driving safely with double and triple trailers. It tells about how important it is to be very careful when driving with more than one trailer, how to couple and uncouple correctly, and of inspecting doubles and triples carefully. You should also study Sections 2, 5 and 6.

### 7.1 PULLING DOUBLE/TRIPLE TRAILERS

Take special care when pulling two and three trailers. There are more things that can go wrong, and doubles/triples are less stable than other commercial vehicles. Some areas of concern are discussed below.

- **Prevent Trailers From Rolling Over**

To prevent trailers from rolling over, you must steer gently and go slowly around corners, onramps, offramps, and curves. A safe speed on a curve for a straight truck or a single trailer combination vehicle may be too fast for a set of doubles or triples.

- **Beware of the Crack-The-Whip Effect**

Doubles and triples are more likely to turn over than other combination vehicles because of the “crack-the-whip” effect. You must steer gently when pulling trailers. The last trailer in a combination is most likely to turn over. If you don’t understand the crack-the-whip effect, study section 6.1 and review figure 6-1 in the combination vehicles section of this manual.

- **Inspect Completely**

There are more critical parts to check when you have two or three trailers. Check them all. Follow the procedures described later in this section.

- **Look Far Ahead**

Doubles and triples must be driven very smoothly to avoid rollover or jackknife. Therefore, look far ahead so you can slow down or change lanes gradually when necessary.

- **Manage Space**

Doubles and triples take up more space than other commercial vehicles. They are not only longer, but also need more space because they can’t be turned or stopped suddenly. Allow more following distance. Make sure you have large enough gaps before entering or crossing traffic. Be certain you are clear at the sides before changing lanes.

- **Adverse Conditions**

Be more careful in adverse conditions. In bad weather, slippery conditions, and mountain driving, you must be especially careful if you drive double and triple bottoms. You will have greater length and more dead axles to pull with your drive axles than other drivers. There is more chance for skids and loss of traction.

### 7.2 COUPLING AND UNCOUPLING

Knowing how to couple and uncouple correctly is basic to safe operation of doubles and triples. Wrong coupling and uncoupling can be very dangerous. Coupling and uncoupling steps for doubles and triples are listed below:

- **Coupling Twin Trailers**

#### Secure Second (Rear) Trailer

- If the second trailer doesn’t have spring brakes, drive the tractor close to the trailer, connect the emergency line, charge the trailer air tank, and disconnect the emergency line. This will set the trailer emergency brakes (if the slack adjusters are correctly adjusted). Chock the wheels if you have any doubt about the brakes.

#### Couple tractor and first semitrailer as described earlier.

**Caution:** For the safest handling on the road, the more heavily loaded semitrailer should be in first position behind the tractor. The lighter trailer should be in the rear.

A converter gear or dolly is a coupling device of one or two axles and a fifth wheel by which a semitrailer can be coupled to the rear of a tractor-trailer combination forming a double bottom rig.

#### Position Converter Dolly in Front of Second (Rear) Trailer

- Release dolly brakes by opening the air tank petcock.

(Or, if the dolly has spring brakes, use the dolly parking brake control.)

- If the distance is not too great, then wheel dolly into position by hand so it is in line with the kingpin.
- Or, use the tractor and first semitrailer to pick up the converter dolly:
  - Position combination as close as possible to converter dolly.
  - Move dolly to rear of first semitrailer and couple it to the trailer.
  - Lock pintle hook.
  - Secure dolly support in raised position.
  - Pull dolly into position as close as possible to nose of the second semitrailer.
  - Lower dolly support.
  - Unhook dolly from first trailer.
  - Wheel dolly into position in front of second trailer in line with the kingpin.

#### **Connect Converter Dolly to Front Trailer**

- Back first semitrailer into position in front of dolly tongue.
- Hook dolly to front trailer.
  - Lock pintle hook.
  - Secure converter gear support in raised position.

#### **Connect Converter Dolly to Rear Trailer**

- Make sure trailer brakes are locked and/or wheels chocked.
- Make sure trailer height is correct. (It must be slightly lower than the center of the fifth wheel, so trailer is raised slightly when dolly is pushed under.)
- Back converter dolly under rear trailer.
- Raise landing gear slightly off ground to prevent damage if trailer moves.
- Test coupling by pulling against pin of number two semitrailer.
- Make visual check of coupling. (No space between upper and lower fifth wheel. Locking jaws closed on kingpin).
- Connect safety chains, air hoses, and light cords.
- Close converter dolly air tank petcock and shut-off valves at rear of second trailer (service and emergency shut-offs).
- Open shut-off valves at rear of first trailer and on dolly, if so equipped.

- Raise landing gear completely.
- Charge trailers push “air supply” knob in and check for air at rear of second trailer by opening the emergency line shut-off. If air pressure isn’t there, something is wrong and the brakes won’t work.

#### **● Uncoupling Twin Trailers**

##### **Uncouple Rear Trailer**

- Park rig in a straight line on firm, level ground.
- Apply parking brakes so rig won’t move.
- Chock wheels of second trailer if it doesn’t have spring brakes.
- Lower landing gear of second semitrailer enough to remove some weight from dolly.
- Close air shut-offs at rear of first semitrailer and on dolly, if so equipped.
- Disconnect all dolly air and electric lines and secure them.
- Release dolly brakes.
- Release converter dolly fifth wheel latch.
- Slowly pull tractor, first semitrailer, and dolly forward to pull dolly out from under rear semitrailer.

##### **Uncouple Converter Dolly**

- Lower dolly landing gear.
- Disconnect safety chains.
- Apply converter gear spring brakes or chock wheels.
- Release pintle hook on first semitrailer.
- Slowly pull clear of dolly.

**Caution:** Never unlock the pintle hook with the dolly still under the rear trailer. The dolly tow bar may fly up, possibly causing injury, and making it very difficult to re-couple.

#### **● Coupling & Uncoupling Triple Trailers**

##### **Couple Second and Third Trailers**

- Couple second and third trailers using the method for coupling doubles.
- Uncouple tractor and pull away from second and third trailers.

## **Couple Tractor/First Semitrailer to Second/Third Trailers**

- Couple tractor to first trailer. Use the method already described for coupling tractor-semitrailers.
- Move converter dolly into position and couple first trailer to second trailer using the method for coupling doubles. Triples rig is now complete.

## **Uncouple Triple-trailer Rig**

- Uncouple third trailer by pulling the dolly out, then unhitching the dolly using the method for uncoupling doubles.
- Uncouple remainder of rig as you would any double-bottom rig using the method already described.

## **Coupling & Uncoupling Other Combinations**

The methods described so far apply to the more common tractor-trailer combinations. However, there are other ways of coupling and uncoupling the many types of truck-trailer and tractor-trailer combinations that are in use. There are too many to cover in this manual. Learn the right way to couple the vehicle(s) you will drive according to the manufacturer and/or owner.

---

## **7.3 INSPECTING DOUBLES AND TRIPLES**

Use the seven-step inspection procedure described in Section 2 to inspect your combination vehicle. There are more things to inspect on a combination vehicle than on a single vehicle. Many of these items are simply more of what you would find on a single vehicle. (For example, tires, wheels, lights, reflectors, etc.) However, there are also some new things to check. These are discussed below.

### **● Additional Things to Check During A Walk-around Inspection**

Do these checks in addition to those already listed in Section 2, "Step 5: Do Walk-around Inspection."

## **Coupling System Areas**

- Check fifth wheel (lower).
  - Securely mounted to frame.
  - No missing, damaged parts.
  - Enough grease.
  - No visible space between upper and lower fifth wheel.
  - Locking jaws around the shank, not the head of kingpin.
  - Release arm properly seated and safety latch/lock

engaged.

- Fifth wheel (upper).
  - Glide plate securely mounted to trailer frame.
  - Kingpin not damaged.
- Air and electric lines to trailer.
  - Electrical cord firmly plugged in and secured.
  - Air lines properly connected to glad hands, no air leaks, properly secured with enough slack for turns.
  - All lines free from damage.
- Sliding fifth wheel.
  - Slide not damaged or parts missing.
  - Properly greased.
  - All locking pins present and locked in place.
  - If air powered no air leaks.
  - Check that fifth wheel is not so far forward that tractor frame will hit landing gear, or cab hit the trailer, during turns.

## **Landing Gear**

- Fully raised, no missing parts, not bent or otherwise damaged.
- Crank handle in place and secured.
- If power operated, no air or hydraulic leaks.

## **Double and Triple Trailers**

- Shut-off valves at rear of trailers, in service and emergency lines:
  - Rear of front trailers: OPEN.
  - Rear of last trailer: CLOSED.
  - Converter dolly air tank drain valve: CLOSED.
- Be sure air lines are supported and glad hands are properly connected.
- If spare tire is carried on converter gear (dolly), make sure it's secured.
- Be sure pintle eye of dolly is in place in pintle hook of trailers.
- Make sure pintle hook is latched.
- Safety chains should be secured to trailers.
- Be sure light cords are firmly in sockets on trailers.

Do these checks in addition to Section 5.3, "Inspecting Air Brake Systems."

## 7.4 DOUBLES/TRIPLES AIR BRAKE CHECK

Check the brakes on a double or triple trailer as you would any combination vehicle. Section 6.2 explains how to check air brakes on combination vehicles. You must also make the following checks on your double or triple trailers:

### ● Check That Air Flows to All Trailers (Double and Triple Trailers)

Use the tractor parking brake and/or chock the wheels to hold the vehicle. Wait for air pressure to reach normal, then push in the red “trailer air supply” knob. This will supply air to the emergency supply lines. Use the trailer hand brake to provide air to the service line. Go to the rear of the rig. Open the emergency line shut-off valve at the rear of the last trailer. You should hear air escaping, showing the entire system is charged. Close the emergency line valve. Open the service line valve to check that service pressure goes through all the trailers (this test assumes that the trailer hand brake or the service brake pedal is on, then close the valve). If you do NOT hear air escaping from both lines, check that the shut-off valves on the trailers and dolly(s) are in the OPEN position. You MUST have air all the way to the back for all the brakes to work.

### ● Test Tractor Protection Valve

Charge the trailer air brake system. That is, build up normal air pressure and push the “air supply” knob in. Shut the engine off. Step on and off the brake pedal several times to reduce the air pressure in the tanks. The trailer air supply control (also called the tractor protection valve control) should pop out or go from “normal” to “emergency” position when the air pressure falls into the pressure range specified by the manufacturer (usually within the range of 20 to 45 psi).

If the tractor protection valve doesn’t work right, an air hose or trailer brake leak could drain all the air from the tractor. This would cause the emergency brakes to come on, with possible loss of control.

### ● Test Trailer Emergency Brakes

Charge the trailer air brake system and check that the trailer rolls freely. Then stop and pull out the trailer air supply control (also called tractor protection valve control) or trailer emergency valve, or place it in the “emergency” position. Pull gently on the trailer with the tractor to check that the trailer emergency brakes are on.

### ● Test Trailer Service Brakes

Check for normal air pressure, release the parking brakes, move the vehicle forward slowly, and apply trailer brakes with the hand control trolley valve, if so equipped. You

should feel the brakes come on. This tells you the trailer brakes are connected and working. The trailer brakes should be tested with the hand valve, but controlled in normal operation with the foot pedal, which applies air to the service brakes at all wheels.

### Test Your Knowledge

1. What is a converter dolly?
2. Do converter dollies have spring brakes?
3. What three methods can you use to secure a second trailer before coupling?
4. How do you check to make sure trailer height is correct before coupling?
5. What do you check when making a visual check of coupling?
6. Why should you pull a dolly out from under a trailer before you disconnect it from the trailer in front?
7. What should you check for when inspecting the converter dolly? The pintle hook?
8. Should the shut-off valves on the rear of the last trailer be open or closed? On the first trailer in a set of doubles? On the middle trailer of a set of triples?
9. How can you test that air flows to all trailers?

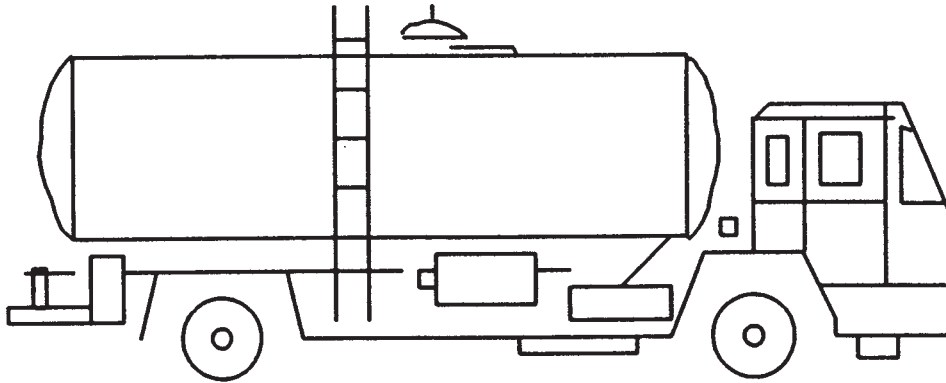
These questions may be on your test. If you can’t answer them all, re-read Sections 7.1, 7.2, 7.3 and 7.4.

---

## Section 8

---

### Tank Vehicles



THIS SECTION IS FOR DRIVERS WHO WILL DRIVE TANK  
VEHICLES WHICH CARRY GASES OR LIQUID IN BULK

# Section 8: Tank Vehicles

## This Section Covers

- **Inspecting Tank Vehicles**
- **Driving Tank Vehicles**

This section has information needed to pass the CDL knowledge test for driving a tank vehicle. You should also study Sections 2, 5, and 6. A “tank vehicle” is defined as a commercial motor vehicle that is designed to transport any liquid or gaseous materials within a tank that is either permanently or temporarily attached to the vehicle or chassis. Such vehicles include, but are not limited to, cargo tanks and portable tanks, as defined in 49 CFR, Part 171. A CDL tank endorsement is required if the cargo tank has bulk packaging over 119 gallons for liquids, or a water capacity greater than 1,000 pounds as a receptacle for a gas if, they are permanently attached to or forms a part of a motor vehicle, or is not permanently attached to a motor vehicle but which, by reason of its size, construction, or attachment to a motor vehicle is loaded or unloaded without being removed from the motor vehicle and is not built to the specifications for cylinders, or portable tanks. A portable tank is defined as a bulk packaging (except a cylinder having a water capacity of 1,000 pounds or less) designed primarily to be loaded onto, or on, or temporarily attached to a transport vehicle and equipped with skids, mounting, or accessories to facilitate handling of the tank by mechanical means. A portable tank that meets the bulk packaging definition described above requires a CDL with a tank endorsement. However, this definition does not include portable tanks having a rated capacity under 1,000 gallons.

Before loading, unloading, or driving a tanker, inspect the vehicle. This makes sure that the vehicle is safe to carry the liquid or gas and is safe to drive.

---

## 8.1 INSPECTING TANK VEHICLES

Tank vehicles have special items that you need to check. Tank vehicles come in many types and sizes. You need to check the vehicle’s operator’s manual to make sure you know how to inspect your tank vehicle.

- **Leaks**

On all tank vehicles, the most important item to check for is leaks. Check under and around the vehicle for signs of any leaking. Don’t carry liquids or gases in a leaking tank. In general, check the following:

- Check the tank’s body or shell for dents or leaks.

- Check the intake, discharge, and cut-off valves. Make sure the valves are in the correct position before loading, unloading, or moving the vehicle.
- Check pipes, connections, and hoses for leaks, especially around joints.
- Check manhole covers and vents. Make sure the covers have gaskets and they close correctly. Keep the vents clear so they work correctly.
- Check special purpose equipment. If your vehicle has any of the following equipment, make sure it works:
  - Vapor recovery kits.
  - Grounding and bonding cables.
  - Emergency shut-off systems.
  - Built-in fire extinguisher.

Make sure you know how to operate your special equipment.

- Check the emergency equipment required for your vehicle. Find out what equipment you’re required to carry and make sure you have it (and it works).

---

## 8.2 DRIVING TANK VEHICLES

Hauling liquids in tanks requires special skills because of the high center of gravity and liquid movement.

- **High Center of Gravity**

High center of gravity means that much of the load’s weight is carried high up off the road. This makes the vehicle top-heavy and easy to roll over. Liquid tankers are especially easy to roll over. Tests have shown that tankers can turn over at the speed limits posted for curves. Take highway curves and on-ramp/off-ramp curves well below the posted speeds.

- **Danger of Surge**

Liquid surge results from movement of the liquid in partially filled tanks. This movement can have bad effects on handling. For example, when coming to a stop, the liquid will surge back and forth. When the wave hits the end of the tank, it tends to push the truck in the direction the wave is moving. If the truck is on a slippery surface such as ice, the wave can shove a stopped truck out into an intersection. The driver of a liquid tanker must be very familiar with the handling of the vehicle.

- **Bulkheads**

Some liquid tanks are divided into several smaller tanks by bulkheads. When loading and unloading the smaller tanks, the driver must pay attention to weight distribution. Don't put too much weight on the front or rear of the vehicle.

- **Baffled Tanks**

Baffled liquid tanks have bulkheads in them with holes that let the liquid flow through. The baffles help to control the forward and backward liquid surge. Side-to-side surge can still occur. This can cause a rollover.

- **Un-baffled Tanks**

Un-baffled liquid tankers (sometimes called "smooth bore" tanks) have nothing inside to slow down the flow of the liquid. Therefore, forward-and-back surge is very strong. Un-baffled tanks are usually those that transport food products (milk, for example). (Sanitation regulations forbid the use of baffles because of the difficulty in cleaning the inside of the tank.) Be extremely cautious slow and careful in driving smooth bore tanks, especially when starting and stopping.

- **Outage**

Never load a cargo tank totally full. Liquids expand as they warm and you must leave room for the expanding liquid. This is called "outage." Since different liquids expand by different amounts, they require different amounts of outage. You must know the outage requirement when hauling liquids in bulk.

- **How Much To Load?**

A full tank of dense liquid, such as some acids, may exceed legal weight limits. For that reason, you may often only partially fill tanks with heavy liquids. The amount of liquid to load into a tank depends on:

- The amount the liquid will expand in transit.
- The weight of the liquid.
- Legal weight limits.

---

## 8.3 SAFE DRIVING RULES

In order to drive tank vehicles safely, you must remember to follow all the safe driving rules. A few of these rules are:

- **Drive Smoothly**

- Drive smoothly. Because of the high center of gravity

and the surge of the liquid, you must start, slow down, and stop very smoothly. Also, make smooth turns and lane changes.

- **Braking**

- If you must make a quick stop to avoid a crash, use controlled or stab braking. If you do not remember how to stop using these methods, review Section 2.13. Also, remember that if you steer quickly while braking, your vehicle may roll over.

- **Curves**

- Slow down before curves, then accelerate slightly through the curve. The posted speed for a curve may be too fast for a tank vehicle.

- **Stopping Distance**

- Keep in mind how much space you need to stop your vehicle. Remember that wet roads double the normal stopping distance. Empty tank vehicles may take longer to stop than full ones.

- **Skids**

- Don't over steer, over accelerate, or over brake. If you do, your vehicle may skid. On tank trailers, if your drive wheels or trailer wheels begin to skid, your vehicle may jackknife. When any vehicle starts to skid, you must take action to restore traction to the wheels.

Test Your Knowledge
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. How are bulkheads different than baffles?</li><li>2. Should a tank vehicle take curves, onramps, or offramps at the posted speed limits?</li><li>3. How are smooth bore tankers different to drive than those with baffles?</li><li>4. What three things determine how much liquid you can load?</li><li>5. What is outage?</li><li>6. What two reasons make special care necessary when driving tank vehicles?</li></ol>
These questions may be on the test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Section 8.2.



---

## Section 9

---

### Hazardous Materials



THIS SECTION IS FOR DRIVERS WHO WILL HAUL  
HAZARDOUS MATERIALS REQUIRING PLACARDS

# Section 9: Hazardous Materials

## This Section Covers

- **The Intent of the Regulations**
- **Driver Responsibilities**
- **Communications Rules**
- **Loading & Unloading**
- **Bulk Tank Loading, Unloading, and Marking**
- **Driving & Parking Rules**
- **Emergencies**

Hazardous materials are products that pose a risk to health, safety, and property during transportation. The term often is shortened to HAZMAT, which you may see on road signs, or to HM in government regulations. Hazardous materials include explosives, various types of gas, solids, flammable and combustible liquid, and other materials. Because of the risks involved and the potential consequences these risks impose, the transportation of hazardous materials is very heavily regulated by all levels of government.

The Hazardous Materials Regulations (HMR) are found in Parts 171-180 of Title 49 of the Code of Federal Regulations. The common reference for these regulations is 49 CFR 171-180.

The Hazardous Materials Table in these regulations contains a list of these items. However, this list is not all-inclusive. Whether or not a material is considered hazardous is based on its characteristics and the shipper's decision on whether or not the material meets a definition of a hazardous material in the regulations.

The regulations require vehicles transporting certain types or quantities of hazardous materials to display diamond-shaped, square-on-point, warning signs called placards.

This section is designed to assist you in understanding your role and responsibilities in hauling hazardous materials. Due to the constantly changing nature of government regulations, it is impossible to guarantee absolute accuracy of the materials in this section. An up-to-date copy of the complete regulations is essential for you to have. Included in these regulations is a complete glossary of terms.

You must have a commercial driver license (CDL) with a hazardous materials endorsement before driving vehicles carrying hazardous materials which require placards. You must pass a written test about the regulations and requirements to get this endorsement.

Everything you need to know to pass the written test is in this section. However, this is only a beginning. Most drivers need to know much more on the job. You can learn more by reading and understanding the federal and state rules appli-

cable to hazardous materials as well as attending hazardous materials training courses. These courses are usually offered by your employer, colleges and universities, and various associations. You can get copies of the Federal Regulations 49 CFR through your local Government Printing Office bookstore and various industry publishers. Union or company offices often have copies of the rules for driver use. Find out where you can get your own copy to use on the job.

The regulations require training and testing for all drivers involved in transporting hazardous materials. Your employer or a designated representative is required to provide this training and testing. Hazardous materials employers are required to keep a record of that training on each employee as long as that employee is working with hazardous materials, and for 90 days thereafter. The regulations require that hazardous materials employees be trained and tested at least once every two years.

The regulations also require that drivers have special training before driving a vehicle transporting certain flammable gas materials or highway route controlled quantities of radioactive materials. In addition, drivers transporting cargo tanks and portable tanks must receive specialized training. Each driver's employer or their designated representative must provide such training.

Some locations require permits to transport certain explosives or bulk hazardous wastes. States and counties also may require drivers to follow special hazardous materials routes. The federal government may require permits or exemptions for special hazardous materials cargo such as rocket fuel. Find out about permits, exemptions, and special routes for places you drive.

---

## 9.1 THE INTENT OF THE REGULATIONS

### ● **Contain the Material**

Transporting hazardous materials can be risky. The regulations are intended to protect you, those around you, and the environment. They tell shippers how to package the materials safely and drivers how to load, transport, and unload the material. These are called "containment rules."

### ● **Communicate the Risk**

To communicate the risk, shippers must warn drivers and others about the material's hazards. The regulations require shippers to put hazard warning labels on packages, provide proper shipping papers, emergency response information,

and placards. These steps communicate the hazard to the shipper, the carrier, and the driver.

### ● **Assure Safe Drivers and Equipment**

In order to get a hazardous materials endorsement on a CDL, you must pass a written test about transporting hazardous materials. To pass the test, you must know how to:

- Identify what are hazardous materials.
- Safely load shipments.
- Properly placard your vehicle in accordance with the rules.
- Safely transport shipments.

Learn the rules and follow them. Following the rules reduces the risk of injury from hazardous materials. Taking shortcuts by breaking rules is unsafe. Rule breakers can be fined and put in jail.

Inspect your vehicle before and during each trip. Law enforcement officers may stop and inspect your vehicle. When stopped, they may check your shipping papers, vehicle placards, the hazardous materials endorsement on your driver license, and your knowledge of hazardous materials.

---

## **9.2 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS TRANSPORTATION -- WHO DOES WHAT**

### ● **The Shipper**

- Sends products from one place to another by truck, rail, vessel, or airplane.
- Uses the hazardous materials regulations to determine the product's:
  - Proper shipping name.
  - Hazard class.
  - Identification number.
  - Correct packaging.
  - Correct label and markings.
  - Correct placards.
- Must package, mark, and label the materials; prepare shipping papers; provide emergency response information; and supply placards.
- Certify on the shipping paper that the shipment has been prepared according to the rules (unless you are pulling cargo tanks supplied by you or your employer).

### ● **The Carrier**

- Takes the shipment from the shipper to its destination.
- Prior to transportation, checks that the shipper correctly described, marked, labeled, and otherwise prepared the shipment for transportation.
- Refuses improper shipments.
- Reports accidents and incidents involving hazardous materials to the proper government agency.

### ● **The Driver**

- Makes sure the shipper has identified, marked, and labeled the hazardous materials properly.
- Refuses leaking packages and shipments.
- Placards his vehicle when loading, if required.
- Safely transports the shipment without delay.
- Follows all special rules about transporting hazardous materials.
- Keeps hazardous materials shipping papers and emergency response information in the proper place.

---

## **9.3 COMMUNICATION RULES**

### ● **Definitions**

Some words and phrases have special meanings when talking about hazardous materials. Some of these may differ from meanings you are used to. The words and phrases in this section may be on your test. The meanings of other important words are in the glossary at the end of Section 9.

A material's hazard class reflects the risks associated with it. There are nine different hazard classes. Figure 9-1 tells the exact meaning of each hazard class. The types of materials included in these nine classes are in the table on the following page.

Figure 9-1 -- Hazardous Materials Hazard Class/Division Table

Class	Division	Name of Class Or Division	Example
1	1.1	Mass Explosives	Dynamite
	1.2	Projection Hazards	Flares
	1.3	Mass Fire Hazards	Display Fireworks
	1.4	Minor Hazards	Ammunition
	1.5	Very Insensitive	Blasting Agents
	1.6	Extremely Insensitive	Explosive Devices
2	2.1	Flammable Gases	Propane
	2.2	Non-Flammable Gases	Helium
	2.3	Poisonous/Toxic Gases	Flourine, Compressed
3	---	Flammable Liquids	Gasoline
4	4.1	Flammable Solids	Ammonium Picrate, Wetted
	4.2	Spontaneously Combustible	White Phosphorus
	4.3	Spontaneously Combustible when wet	Sodium
5	5.1	Oxidizers	Ammonium Nitrate
	5.2	Organic Peroxides	Methyl Ethyl Ketone Peroxide
6	6.1	Poison (Toxic Material)	Potassium Cyanide
	6.2	Infectious Substances	Anthrax Virus
7	---	Radioactive	Uranium
8	---	Corrosives	Battery Fluid
9	---	Miscellaneous Hazardous Materials	Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCB)
None	---	ORM-D (Other Regulated Material-Domestic)	Food Flavorings, Medicines
None	---	Combustible Liquids	Fuel Oil

A shipping paper describes the hazardous materials being transported. Shipping orders, bills of lading, and manifests are all shipping papers. Figure 9-6 shows an example shipping paper.

After an accident or hazardous materials spill or leak, you may be injured and unable to communicate the hazards of the materials you are transporting. Firefighters and police can prevent or reduce the amount of damage or injury at the scene if they know what hazardous materials are being carried. Your life, and the lives of others, may depend on quickly locating the hazardous materials shipping papers. For that reason the rules:

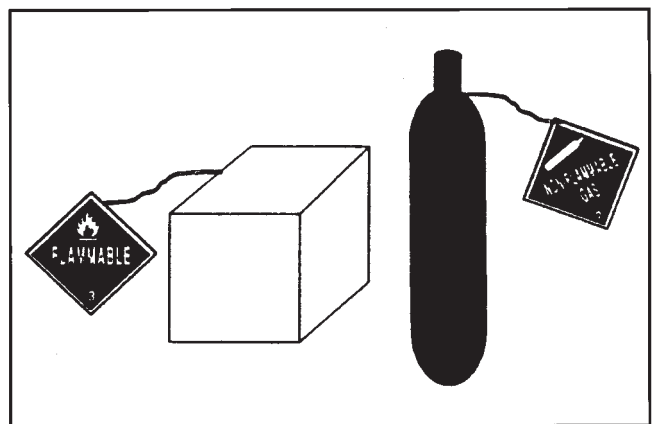
- Require shippers to describe hazardous materials correctly and include an emergency response telephone number on shipping papers.
- Require carriers and drivers to put tabs on hazardous materials shipping papers, or keep them on top of other shipping papers and keep the required emergency response information with the shipping papers.

- Require drivers to keep hazardous materials shipping papers:
  - In a pouch on the driver's door, or
  - In clear view within immediate reach while the seat belt is fastened while driving, or
  - On the driver's seat when out of the vehicle.

### • Package Labels

Shippers put diamond-shaped hazard warning labels on most hazardous materials packages. These labels inform others of the hazard. If the diamond label won't fit on the package, shippers may put the label on a tag securely attached to the package. For example, compressed gas cylinders that will not hold a label will have tags or decals. Labels look like the example in Figure 9-2.

Figure 9-2--Example of Labels

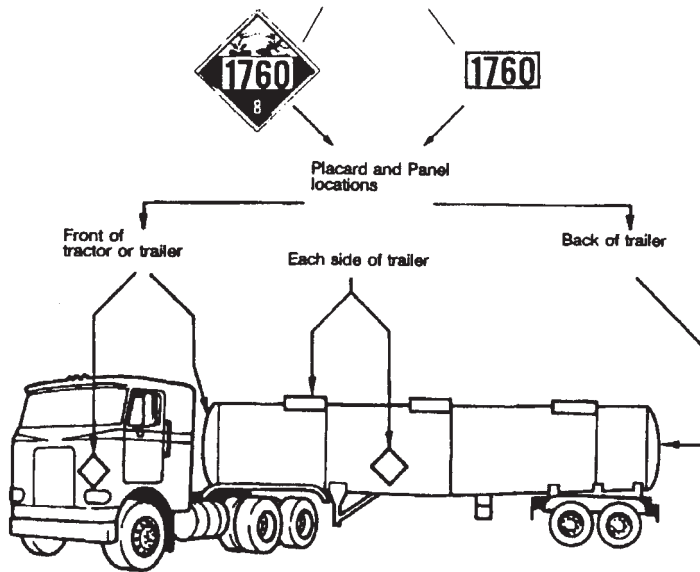


### • List of Regulated Products

**Placards** are used to warn others of hazardous materials. Placards are signs put on the outside of a vehicle which identify the hazard class of the cargo. A placarded vehicle must have at least four identical placards. They are put on the front, rear, and both sides of the vehicle (see Figure 9-3). Placards must be readable from all four directions. They are 10-3/4 inches square, square-on-point, in a diamond shape. Cargo tanks and other bulk packaging display the identification number of their contents on placards or orange panels or white square-on-point displays that are the same size as placards.

Hazardous material identification numbers may be displayed on placards or orange panels.

Figure 9-3--Placard and Panel Locations



There are three main lists used by shippers, carriers, and drivers when trying to identify hazardous materials. Before transporting a material, look for its name on three lists. Some materials are on all lists, others on only one. Always check the following lists:

- Section 172.101, the Hazardous Materials Table.
- Appendix A to Section 172.101, the List of Hazardous Substances and Reportable Quantities.
- Appendix B to Section 172.101, the List of Marine Pollutants.

**The Hazardous Materials Table.** Figure 9-4 shows part of the Hazardous Materials Table. Column 1 tells which shipping modes the entry affects and other information concerning the shipping description. The next five columns show each material's shipping name, hazard class or division, identification number, packaging group, and required labels.

Five different symbols may appear in Column 1 of the table.

- (+) Shows the proper shipping name, hazard class, and packing group to use, even if the material doesn't meet the hazard class definition.
- (A) Means the hazardous material described in Column 2 is subject to the HMR only when offered or intended for transport by air unless it is a hazardous substance or hazardous waste.
- (W) Means the hazardous material described in Column 2 is subject to the HMR only when offered or intended for transportation by water unless it is a hazardous substance, hazardous waste, or marine pollutant.

- (D) Means the proper shipping name is appropriate for describing materials for domestic transportation, but may not be proper for international transportation.
- (I) Identifies a proper shipping name that is used to describe materials in international transportation. A different shipping name may be used when only domestic transportation is involved.

Column 2 lists the proper shipping names and descriptions of regulated materials. Entries are in alphabetical order so you can more quickly find the right entry. The table shows proper shipping names in regular type. The shipping paper must show proper shipping names. Names shown in italics are not proper shipping names.

Column 3 shows a material's hazard class or division, or the entry "Forbidden." Never transport a "Forbidden" material. You placard shipments based on the quantity and hazard class. You can decide which placards to use if you know these three things:

- Material's hazard class.
- Amount being shipped.
- Amount of all hazardous materials of all classes on your vehicle.

Column 4 lists the identification number for each proper shipping name. Identification numbers are preceded by the letters "UN" or "NA." The letters "NA" are associated with proper shipping names that are only used within the United States and to and from Canada. The identification number must appear on the shipping paper as part of the shipping description and also appear on the package. It also must appear on cargo tanks and other bulk packaging. Police and firefighters use this number to quickly identify the hazardous materials.

Column 5 shows the packing group assigned to a material.

Column 6 shows the hazard warning labels shippers must put on packages of hazardous materials. Some products require use of more than one label due to a dual hazard being present. No label is needed where the table shows the word NONE.

Column 7 lists the additional special provisions that apply to this material. When there is an entry in this column, you must refer to the Federal Regulations for specific information.

Figure 9-4 – Part of the Hazardous Materials Table

§ 172.101 Hazardous Materials Table									
Symbols	Hazardous Materials descriptions and proper shipping names	Hazard class or Division	Identification Numbers	Packing Group	Label(s) required (if not excepted)	Special provisions	(8) Packaging Authorizations (§173.***)		
							Excep-tions	Non-bulk pack-aging	Bulk pack-aging
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8A)	(8B)	(8C)
— —	Poisonous, solids, self heating, n.o.s...	6.1	UN3124	I	POISON, SPONTANE—OUSLY COMBUSTIBLE	A5_____	None	211	241

Column 8 is a three-part column showing the section numbers covering the packaging requirements for each hazardous material.

**Note: Columns 9 and 10 do not apply to transportation by highway.**

**Appendix A to §172.101--The List of Hazardous Substances and Reportable Quantities.** The DOT and the EPA want to know about spills of **hazardous substances**. They are named in the List of Hazardous Substances and Reportable Quantities (see Figure 9-5). Column 3 of the list shows each product's reportable quantity (RQ). When these materials are being transported in a reportable quantity or

greater in one package, the shipper displays the letters RQ on the shipping paper and package. The letters RQ may appear before or after the basic description. You or your employer must report any spill of these materials which occurs in a **reportable quantity**.

If the words INHALATION HAZARD appear on the shipping paper or package, the rules require display of the POISON or POISON GAS placards, as appropriate. These placards must be used in addition to other placards which may be required by the product's hazard class. Always display the hazard class placard and the POISON placard, even for small amounts.

Figure 9-5 -- List of Hazardous Substances

LIST OF HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES AND REPORTABLE QUANTITIES - Continued		
Hazardous Substance	Synonyms	Reportable Quantity (RQ) Pounds (Kilograms)
Phenyl mercaptan @	Benzinethiol	100 (45.4)
Phenylmercuric acetate	Thiophenol	100 (45.4)
N-Phenylthiourea	Mercury, (acetato-0) phenyl	100 (45.4)
Phorate	Thiourea, phenyl	100 (45.4)
Phosgene	Phosphorodithioic acid, O,O-diethyl	10 (4.54)
Phosphine	S-(ethylthio), methylester	10 (4.54)
Phosphoric acid	Carbonyl chloride	100 (45.4)
Phosphroic acid, diethyl	Hydrogen Phosphide	5000 (2270)
4-nitrophenyl ester	Diethyl-p nitrophenyl phosphate	100 (45.4)
Phosphoric acid, lead salt	Lead phosphate	1 (0.454)

Spills of 10 pounds or more must be reported.



### Test Your Knowledge

1. Shippers package in order to fill in the blank the material.
2. Drivers placard their vehicle to fill in the blank the risk.
3. What three things do you need to know to decide which placards if any you need?
4. A hazardous materials identification number must appear on the fill in the blank and on the fill in the blank. The identification number must also appear on cargo tanks and other bulk packagings.
5. Where must you keep shipping papers describing hazardous materials?

These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read pages 9-1 through 9-9.

#### • The Shipping Paper

The shipping paper shown in Figure 9-6 describes a shipment. A shipping paper for hazardous materials must include:

- Page numbers if the shipping paper has more than one page. The first page must tell the total number of pages. For example, "Page 1 of 4."
- A proper shipping description for each hazardous material.
- A "shipper's certification," signed by the shipper, saying they prepared the shipment according to the rules.

#### • The Item Description

If a shipping paper describes both hazardous and non-hazardous products, the hazardous materials will be either:

- Described first, or
- Highlighted in a contrasting color, or
- Identified by an "X" placed before the shipping name in a column captioned "HM." The letters "RQ" may be used instead of "X" if a reportable quantity is present in one package.

The basic description of hazardous materials includes the proper shipping name, hazard class or division, the identification number, and the packing group, if any, in that order. The packing group is displayed in Roman numerals and may be preceded by "PG."

Shipping name, hazard class, and identification number must not be abbreviated unless specifically authorized in the hazardous materials regulations. The description must also

show:

- The total quantity and unit of measure.
- The letters RQ, if a reportable quantity.
- If the letters RQ appear, the name of the hazardous substance.
- For "n.o.s." and generic descriptions, the technical name of the hazardous material.

Shipping papers also must list an emergency response telephone number. The emergency response telephone number is the responsibility of the shipper. It can be used by emergency responders to obtain information about any hazardous materials involved in a spill or fire.

Shippers also must provide emergency response information to the motor carrier for each hazardous material being shipped. The emergency response information must be able to be used away from the motor vehicle and must provide information on how to safely handle incidents involving the material. It must include information on the shipping name of the hazardous materials, risks to health, fire, explosion, and initial methods of handling spills, fires, and leaks of the materials.

Such information can be on the shipping paper or some other document that includes the basic description and technical name of the hazardous material. Or, it may be in a guidance book such as the Emergency Response Guidebook (ERG). Motor carriers may assist shippers by keeping an ERG on each vehicle carrying hazardous materials. The driver must provide the emergency response information to any federal, state, or local authority responding to a hazardous materials incident or investigating one.

Total quantity must appear before or after the basic description. The packaging type and the unit of measurement may be abbreviated. For example:

10 ctns. Paint, 3, UN1263, PG II, 500 lbs.

The shipper of hazardous wastes must put the word WASTE before the proper shipping name of the material on the shipping paper (hazardous waste manifest). For example:

Waste Acetone, 3, UN1090, PG 11.

A non-hazardous material may **not** be described by using a hazard class or an identification number.



Figure 9-6 – Example of Shipping Paper

\*RQ\* means that this is a reportable quantity

Hazard Class from Column 3 of the Table

Proper shipping name from Column 2 of the Hazardous Materials Table

ID Number from Column 4 of the Hazardous Materials Table

<b>SHIPPING PAPER</b>				Page 1 of 1
<b>TO:</b>	Wafers R US 88 Valley Street Silicon Junction, CA	<b>FROM:</b>	Essex Corporation 5775 Dawson Avenue Coleta, CA 93117	
<b>QTY</b>	<b>HM</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>WEIGHT</b>	
1 cyl	RQ	Phosgene, 2.3, UN1076, Poison, Inhalation Hazard, Zone A	25 lbs	
<p>This is to certify that the above named materials are properly classified, described, packaged, marked and labeled, and are in proper condition for transportation according to the applicable regulations of the Department of Transportation.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; margin-top: 10px;"> <div> Shipper: Essex Corp  Per: Shultz  Date: 6/27/88 </div> <div> Carrier: Knuckle Bros.  Per:  Date: </div> </div> <p><b>SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS:</b> 24 Hr. Emergency Contact, Ed Shultz, 1-800-555-5555</p>				

### • Shipper's Certification

When the shipper packages hazardous materials, he/she certifies that the package has been prepared according to the rules. The signed shipper's certification appears on the original shipping paper. The only exceptions are when a shipper is a private carrier transporting their own product and when the package is provided by the carrier (for example, a cargo tank). Unless a package is clearly unsafe or does not comply with the HMR, you may accept the shipper's certification concerning proper packaging. Some carriers have additional rules about transporting hazardous materials. Follow your employer's rules when accepting shipments.

### • Package Markings and Labels

Shippers print required markings directly on the package, an attached label, or tag. An important package marking is the name of the hazardous materials. It is the same name as the one on the shipping paper. When required, the shipper will put the following on the package:

- The name and address of shipper or consignee.
- The hazardous material's shipping name and identification number.
- The labels required.

If rules require it, the shipper will put RQ or INHALATION-HAZARD on the package. Packages with liquid containers inside will also have package orientation markings with the arrows pointing in the correct upright direction. The labels used always reflect the hazard class of the product. If a package needs more than one label, the labels will be close together, near the proper shipping name.

### • Recognizing Hazardous Materials

Learn to recognize shipments of hazardous materials. To find out if the shipment includes hazardous materials, look at the shipping paper. Does it have:

- An entry with a proper shipping name, hazard class, and identification number?
- A highlighted entry, or one with an X or RQ in the hazardous materials column?

Other clues suggesting hazardous materials:

- What business is the shipper in? Paint dealer? Chemical supply? Scientific supply house? Pest control or agricultural supplier? Explosives, munitions, or fireworks dealer?

- Are there tanks with diamond labels or placards on the premises?
- What type of package is being shipped? Cylinders and drums are often used for hazardous materials shipments.
- Is a hazard class label, proper shipping name, or identification number on the package?
- Are there any handling precautions?

#### • Hazardous Waste Manifest

When transporting hazardous wastes, you must sign by hand and carry a Uniform Hazardous Waste Manifest. The name and EPA registration number of the shippers, carriers, and destination must appear on the manifest. Shippers must prepare, date, and sign by hand the manifest. Treat the manifest as a shipping paper when transporting the waste. Only give the waste shipment to another registered carrier or disposal/treatment facility. Each carrier transporting the shipment must sign by hand the manifest. After you deliver the shipment, keep your copy of the manifest. Each copy must have all needed signatures and dates, including those of the person to whom you delivered the waste.

#### • Placarding

Attach the appropriate placards to the vehicle before you drive it. You are only allowed to move an improperly placarded vehicle during an emergency, in order to protect life or property.

Placards must appear on both sides and ends of the vehicle. Each placard must be:

- Easily seen from the direction it faces.
- Placed so the words or numbers are level and read from left to right.
- At least three inches away from any other markings.
- Kept clear of attachments or devices such as ladders, doors, and tarpaulins.
- Kept clean and undamaged so that the color, format, and message are easily seen.

To decide which placards to use, you need to know:

- The hazard class of the materials.
- The amount of hazardous materials shipped.
- The total weight of all classes of hazardous materials

in your vehicle.

Always make sure that the shipper shows the correct basic description on the shipping paper and verifies that the proper labels are shown on the packages. If you are not familiar with the material, ask the shipper to contact your office.

#### • Placard Tables

There are two placard tables, Table 1 and Table 2. Table 1 materials must be placarded whenever any amount is transported.

**PLACARD TABLE 1 - ANY AMOUNT**

<b>IF YOUR VEHICLE CONTAINS ANY AMOUNT OF...</b>	<b>PLACARD AS...</b>
1.1 .....	Explosives 1.1
1.2 .....	Explosives 1.2
1.3 .....	Explosives 1.3
2.3 .....	Poison Gas
4.3 .....	Dangerous When Wet
6.1 (PG 1, inhalation hazard only).....	Poison
7 (Radioactive Yellow III Label only).....	Radioactive

Except for bulk packagings, the hazard classes in Table 2 need placards only if the total amount transported is 1,001 pounds or more including the package. Add the amounts from all shipping papers for all the Table 2 products you have on board. You may use DANGEROUS placards instead of separate placards for each Table 2 hazard class when:

- You have 1,001 pounds or more of two or more Table 2 hazard classes, requiring different placards, and
- You have not loaded 5,000 pounds or more of any Table 2 hazard class material at any one place. You must use the specific placard for this material.

If the words INHALATION HAZARD are on the shipping paper or package, you must display POISON placards in addition to any other placards needed by the product's hazard class.

You need not use EXPLOSIVES 1.5, OXIDIZER, and DANGEROUS placards if a vehicle contains Division 1.1 or 1.2 explosives and is placarded with EXPLOSIVES 1.1 or 1.2 placards. You need not use a Division 2.2 NON-FLAMMABLE GAS placard on a vehicle displaying a Division 2.1 FLAMMABLE GAS or for oxygen a Division 2.2 OXYGEN placard.

Placards used to identify the primary hazard class of a

material must have the hazard class or division number displayed in the lower corner of the placard. No hazard class or division number is allowed on placards used to identify a secondary hazard class of a material.

Placards may be displayed for hazardous materials even if not required so long as the placard identifies the hazard of the material being transported.

**PLACARD TABLE 2 -- 1,001 POUNDS OR MORE**

Category of Material (Hazard class division number and additional description, as appropriate)	Placard Name
1.4	Explosives 1.4
1.5	Explosives 1.5
1.6	Explosives 1.6
2.1	Flammable Gas
2.2	Non-Flammable Gas
3	Flammable
Combustible Liquid	Combustible*
4.1	Flammable Solid
4.2	Spontaneously Combustible
5.1	Oxidizer
5.2	Organic Peroxide
6.1 (PG I or II, other than PG I inhalation hazard)	Poison
6.1 (PG III)	Keep Away From Food
6.2	(None)
8	Corrosive
9	Class 9**
ORM-D	(None)

\* FLAMMABLE placard may be used in place of a COMBUSTIBLE placard on a cargo tank or portable tank.

\*\* Class 9 Placard is not required for domestic transportation.

### Test Your Knowledge

1. What is a shipper's certification? Where does it appear? Who signs it?
2. When may non-hazardous materials be described by hazard class words or identification numbers?
3. Name five hazard classes that require placarding in any amount.
4. A shipment described on the Hazardous Waste Manifest may only be delivered to another fill in the blank carrier or treatment facility, which then signs the fill in the blank giving you a copy which you must keep.
5. Your load includes 20 pounds of Division 2.3 gas and 1,001 pounds of flammable gas. What placards do you need, if any?

These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read pages 9-6 through 9-9.

## 9.4 LOADING AND UNLOADING

### • General Loading Requirements

- Do all you can to protect containers of hazardous materials. Don't use any tools which might damage containers or other packaging during loading. Don't use hooks.
- Before loading or unloading, set the parking brake. Make sure the vehicle will not move.
- Many products become more hazardous when exposed to heat. Load hazardous materials away from heat sources.
- Watch for signs of leaking or damaged containers: LEAKS SPELL TROUBLE! Do not transport leaking packages. Depending on the material, you, your truck, and others could be in danger.

Containers of Class 1 (explosives), Class 3 (flammable liquids), Class 4 (flammable solids), Class 5 (oxidizers), Class 8 (corrosives), Class 2 (gases), and Division 6.1 (poisons) must be braced to prevent movement of the packages during transportation.

**No Smoking.** When loading or unloading hazardous materials, keep fire away. Don't let people smoke nearby. Never smoke around:

Class 1                      Division 2.1                      Class 5  
(EXPLOSIVES)      (FLAMMABLE GAS)      (OXIDIZERS)

Class 4                      Class 3  
(FLAMMABLE SOLIDS)      (FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS)

**Secure Against Movement.** Brace containers so they will not fall, slide, or bounce around during transportation. Be very careful when loading containers that have valves or other fittings.

After loading, do not open any package during your trip. Never transfer hazardous materials from one package to another while in transit. You may empty a cargo tank, but do not empty any other package while it is on the vehicle.

**Cargo Heater Rules.** There are special cargo heater rules for loading:

Class 1 (EXPLOSIVES)      Class 3 (FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS)

Division 2.1 (FLAMMABLE GAS)

The rules usually forbid use of cargo heaters, including automatic cargo heater/air conditioner units. Unless you have read all the related rules, don't load the above products in a cargo space that has a heater.

**Use Closed Cargo Space.** You cannot have overhang or tailgate loads of:

Class 1 (EXPLOSIVES)      Class 4 (FLAMMABLE SOLIDS)      Class 5 (OXIDIZERS)

You must load these hazardous materials into a closed cargo space unless all packages are:

Fire and water resistant.

Covered with a fire and water resistant tarp.

- **Precautions for Specific Hazards**

**Explosives.** Turn your engine off before loading or unloading any explosives. Then check the cargo space. You must:

- Disable cargo heaters. Disconnect heater power sources and drain heater fuel tanks.
- Make sure there are no sharp points that might damage cargo. Look for bolts, screws, nails, broken side panels, and broken floor boards.
- Use a floor lining with Division 1.1, 1.2, or 1.3 Class A or B explosives. The floors must be tight and the liner must be either non-metallic material or non-ferrous metal.

Use extra care to protect explosives. Never use hooks or other metal tools. Never drop, throw, or roll packages. Protect explosive packages from other cargo that might

cause damage.

Do not transfer a Division 1.1, 1.2, or 1.3 (Class A or B explosive) from one vehicle to another on a public roadway except in an emergency. If safety requires an emergency transfer, set out red warning reflectors, flags, or electric lanterns. You must warn others on the road.

Never transport damaged packages of explosives. Do not take a package that shows any dampness or oily stain.

Do not transport Division 1.1 or 1.2 Class A explosives in triples or in vehicle combinations if:

- There is a marked or placarded cargo tank in the combination.
- The other vehicle in the combination contains:
  - Division 1.1 A (initiating explosives).
  - Packages of Class 7 (radioactive) materials labeled "Yellow III."
  - Division 2.3 (poisonous gas) or Division 6.1 (poisonous) materials.
  - Hazardous materials in a portable tank, on a DOT Spec 106 A or 110 A tank.

**Class 8 (Corrosive) Materials.** If loading by hand, load breakable containers of corrosive liquid one by one. Keep them right side up. Do not drop or roll the containers. Load them onto an even floor surface. Stack carboys only if the lower tiers can bear the weight of the upper tiers safely.

Do not load nitric acid above any other product, or stack more than two high.

Load charged storage batteries so their liquid won't spill. Keep them right side up. Make sure other cargo won't fall against or short circuit them.

Never load corrosive liquids next to or above:

- Division 1.4 Explosives C.
- Class 4 Flammable Solids.
- Class 5 Oxidizers.
- Division 2.3, Zone B Poisonous Gases.

Never load corrosive liquids with:

- Division 1.1 or 1.2 Explosives A.
- Division 1.2 or 1.3 Explosives B.
- Division 1.5 Blasting Agents.

- Division 2.3, Zone A (Poisonous Gases).
- Division 4.2 (Spontaneously Combustible Materials).
- Division 6.1, PGI, Zone A (Poison Liquids).

**Class 2 (Compressed Gases) Including Cryogenic Liquids.** If your vehicle doesn't have racks to hold cylinders, the cargo space floor must be flat. The cylinders must be:

- Held upright or braced laying down flat.
- In racks attached to the vehicle.
- In boxes that will keep them from turning over.

**Division 2.3 Poisonous Gas or Division 6.1 Poisonous Materials.** Never transport these materials in containers with interconnections. Never load a package labeled POISON or POISON GAS in the driver's cab or sleeper or with food material for human or animal consumption.

**Class 7 (Radioactive) Materials.** Some packages of Class

7 radioactive materials bear a number called the "transport index." The shipper labels these packages Radioactive II or Radioactive III, and prints the package's transport index on the label. Radiation surrounds each package, passing through all nearby packages. To deal with this problem, the number of packages you can load together is controlled. Their closeness to people, animals, and unexposed film is also controlled. The transport index tells the degree of control needed during transportation. The total transport index of all packages in a single vehicle must not exceed 50.

Appendix A to this section shows rules for each transport index. It shows how close you can load Class 7 radioactive materials to people, animals, or film. For example, you can't leave a package with a transport index of 1.1 within two feet of people or cargo space walls.

Mixed loads. The rules require some products to be loaded separately. You cannot load them together in the same cargo space. Figure 9-7 lists some examples. The regulations (the Segregation and Separation Chart) name other materials you must keep apart.

Figure 9-7 -- Prohibited Loading Combinations

DO NOT LOAD...	IN THE SAME VEHICLE WITH...
Division 6.1 or 2.3 (POISON or poison gas labeled material)	animal or human food unless the poison package is overpacked in an approved way. Foodstuffs are anything you swallow. However, mouthwash, toothpaste, and skin creams are not foodstuff.
Division 2.3 (poisonous) gas, Zone A or Division 6.1 (poison) liquids, PGI, Zone A	Division 5.1 (oxidizers), class 3 (flammable liquids), Class 8 (corrosive liquids), Division 5.2 (organic peroxides), Division 1.1, 1.2, 1.3 (Class A or B) explosives, Division 1.5 (blasting agents), Division 2.1 (flammable gases), Class 4 (flammable solids).
Charged storage batteries	Division 1.1 (Class A Explosives).
Class 1 (Detonating primers)	any other explosives unless in authorized containers or packagings.
Division 6.1 (Cyanides or cyanide mixtures)	acids, corrosive materials, or other acidic materials which could release hydrocyanic acid from cyanides. For example: Cyanides, Inorganic, n.o.s. Silver Cyanide Sodium Cyanide
Nitric acid (Class B)	other materials unless the nitric acid is not loaded above any other material and not more than two tiers high.

### Test Your Knowledge

1. Around which hazard classes must you never smoke?
2. Which three hazard classes should not be loaded into a trailer that has a heater/air conditioner unit?
3. Should the floor liner required for Division 1.1 or 1.2 Explosives A be stainless steel?
4. At the shipper's dock you're given a paper for 100 cartons of battery acid. You already have 100 pounds of dry Silver Cyanide on board. What precautions do you have to take?
5. Name a hazard class that uses transport indexes to determine the amount that can be loaded in a single vehicle.

These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Section 9.4.

## 9.5 BULK PACKAGING MARKING, LOADING & UNLOADING

The glossary at the end of this section gives the meaning of the word bulk. Cargo tanks are bulk packaging permanently attached to a vehicle. Cargo tanks remain on the vehicle when you load and unload them. Portable tanks are bulk containers which are not permanently attached to a vehicle. The product is loaded or unloaded while the portable tanks are off the vehicle. Portable tanks are then put on a vehicle for transportation. There are many types of cargo tanks in use. The most common cargo tanks are MC306 for liquids and MC331 for gases.

### ● Markings

You must display the identification number of the hazardous materials in portable tanks and cargo tanks and other bulk packaging (such as dump trucks). Identification numbers are in column 4 of the Hazardous Materials Table. The rules require black 100 mm (3.9 inch) numbers on orange panels, placards, or a white, diamond-shaped background if no placards are required. Specification cargo tanks must show re-test date markings.

Portable tanks must also show the lessee or owner's name. They must also display the shipping name of the contents on two opposing sides. The letters of the shipping name must be at least two inches tall on portable tanks with capacities of more than 1,000 gallons and one-inch tall on portable tanks with capacities of less than 1,000 gallons. The identification number must appear on each side and each end of a portable tank or other bulk packaging that holds 1,000 gallons or more and on two opposing sides, if the portable tank holds less than 1,000 gallons. The identification numbers must still be visible when the portable tank is on the motor vehicle. If they are not visible, you must display the identification number on both sides and ends of the motor vehicle.

### ● Tank Loading

The person in charge of loading and unloading a cargo tank must be sure a qualified person is always watching. This person watching the loading or unloading must:

- Be alert.
- Have a clear view of the cargo tank.
- Be within 25 feet of the tank.
- Know of the hazards of the materials involved.
- Know the procedures to follow in an emergency.
- Be authorized to move the cargo tank and able to do so.
- Close all manholes and valves before moving a tank of hazardous materials, no matter how small the amount in the tank or how short the distance. Manholes and valves must be closed to prevent leaks.

### ● Flammable Liquids

Turn off your engine before loading or unloading any flammable liquids. Only run the engine if needed to operate a pump. Ground a cargo tank correctly before filling it through an open filling hole. Ground the tank before opening the filling hole, and maintain the ground until after closing the filling hole.

### ● Compressed Gas

Keep liquid discharge valves on a compressed gas tank closed except when loading and unloading. Unless your engine runs a pump for product transfer, turn it off when loading or unloading. If you use the engine, turn it off after product transfer, before you unhook the hose. Unhook all loading/unloading connections before coupling, uncoupling, or moving a chlorine cargo tank. Always chock trailers and semi-trailers to prevent motion when uncoupled from the power unit.

### Test Your Knowledge

1. What are cargo tanks?
2. How is a portable tank different from a cargo tank?
3. Your engine runs a pump used during delivery of compressed gas. Should you turn off the engine before or after unhooking hoses after delivery?

These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Section 9.5.



---

## 9.6 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS - DRIVING & PARKING RULES

### ● **Parking with Division 1.1, 1.2, or 1.3 Class A or B Explosives**

Never park with Division 1.1, 1.2, or 1.3 Class A or B explosives within five feet of the travelled part of the road. Except for short periods of time needed for vehicle operation necessities (e.g., fueling), do not park within 300 feet of:

- A bridge, tunnel, or building.
- A place where people gather.
- An open fire.

If you must park to do your job, do so only briefly.

Don't park on private property unless the owner is aware of the danger. Someone must always watch the parked vehicle. You may let someone else watch it for you only if your vehicle is:

- On the shipper's property.
- On the carrier's property.
- On the consignee's property.

You are allowed to leave your vehicle unattended in a safe haven. A safe haven is an approved place for parking unattended vehicles loaded with explosives. Designation of authorized safe havens are usually made by local authorities.

### ● **Parking A Placarded Vehicle Not Transporting Division 1.1, 1.2, or 1.3 Class A or B**

You may park a placarded vehicle not laden with explosives within five feet of the travelled part of the road only if your work requires it. Do so only briefly. Someone must always watch the vehicle when parked on a public roadway or shoulder. Do not uncouple a trailer and leave it with hazardous materials on a public street. Do not park within 300 feet of an open fire.

### ● **Attending Parked**

The person attending a placarded vehicle must:

- Be in the vehicle, awake, and not in the sleeper berth, or within 100 feet of the vehicle and have it within clear view.
- Be aware of the hazards of the materials being trans-

ported.

- Know what to do in emergencies.
- Be able to move the vehicle, if needed.

### ● **No Flares!**

You might break down and have to use stopped vehicle signals. Use reflective triangles or red electric lights. Never use burning signals, such as flares or fusees, around a:

- Tank used for Class 3 flammable liquids or Division 2.1 flammable gas whether loaded or empty.
- Vehicle loaded with Division 1.1, 1.2, or 1.3 Class A or B explosives.

### ● **Route Restrictions**

Some states and counties require permits to transport hazardous materials or wastes. They may limit the routes you can use. Local rules about routes and permits change often. It is your job as driver to find out if you need permits or must use special routes. Make sure you have all needed papers before starting.

If you work for a carrier, ask your dispatcher about route restrictions or permits. If you are an independent trucker and are planning a new route, check with state agencies where you plan to travel. Some localities prohibit transportation of hazardous materials through tunnels, over bridges, or other roadways. Check before you start.

Whenever placarded, avoid heavily populated areas, crowds, tunnels, narrow streets, and alleys. Take other routes, even if inconvenient, unless there is no other way. Never drive a placarded vehicle near open fires unless you can safely pass without stopping.

If transporting Division 1.1, 1.2, or 1.3 Class A or B explosives, you must have a written route plan and follow that plan. Carriers prepare the route plan in advance and give the driver a copy. You may plan the route yourself if you pick up the explosives at a location other than your employer's terminal. Write out the plan in advance. Keep a copy of it with you while transporting the explosives. Deliver shipments of explosives only to authorized persons or leave them in locked rooms designed for explosives storage.

A carrier must choose the safest route to transport placarded radioactive materials. After choosing the route, the carrier must tell the driver about the radioactive materials, and show the route plan.



- **No Smoking**

Do not smoke within 25 feet of a placarded cargo tank used for Class 3 flammable liquids or Division 2.1 gases. Also, do not smoke or carry a lighted cigarette, cigar, or pipe within 25 feet of any vehicle which contains:

Class 1 EXPLOSIVES	Class 3 FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS
Class 4 FLAMMABLE SOLIDS	Class 5 OXIDIZERS

- **Refuel With Engine Off**

Turn off your engine before fueling a motor vehicle containing hazardous materials. Someone must always be at the nozzle, controlling fuel flow.

- **10 B-C Fire Extinguisher**

The power unit of placarded vehicles must have a fire extinguisher with a UL rating of 10 B-C or more.

- **Check Tires Every 2 Hours/100 Miles**

Make sure your tires are properly inflated. Check B placarded vehicles with dual tires at the start of each trip and when you park. You must stop and check the tires every 2 hours or 100 miles, whichever is less. The only acceptable way to check tire pressure is to use a tire pressure gauge.

Do not drive with a tire that is leaking or flat except to the nearest safe place to fix it. Remove any overheated tire. Place it a safe distance from your vehicle. Don't drive until you correct the cause of the overheating. Remember to follow the rules about parking and attending placarded vehicles. They apply even when checking, repairing, or replacing tires.

- **Where to Keep Shipping Papers and Emergency Response Information**

Do not accept a hazardous materials shipment without a properly prepared shipping paper. A shipping paper for hazardous materials must always be easily recognized. Other people must be able to find it quickly after an accident.

- Clearly distinguish hazardous materials shipping papers from others by tabbing them or keeping them on top of the stack of papers.
- When you are behind the wheel, keep shipping papers within your reach with your seat belt on, or in a pouch on the driver's door. They must be easily seen by someone entering the cab.

- When not behind the wheel, leave shipping papers in the driver's door pouch or on the driver's seat.
- Emergency response information must be kept in the same location as the shipping paper.

- **Papers for Division 1.1, 1.2, or 1.3 Class A or B Explosives**

A carrier must give each driver transporting Division 1.1, 1.2, or 1.3 Class A or B explosives a copy of Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations (FMCSR), Part 397. The carrier must also give written instructions on what to do if delayed or in an accident. The written instructions must include:

- The names and telephone numbers of people to contact, including carrier agents or shippers.
- The nature of the explosives transported.
- The precautions to take in emergencies such as fires, accidents, or leaks.

Drivers must sign a receipt for these documents.

You must be familiar with, and have in your possession while driving, the:

- Shipping papers.
- Written emergency instructions.
- Written route plan.
- A copy of FMCSR, Part 397.

- **Equipment for Chlorine**

A driver transporting chlorine in cargo tanks must have an approved gas mask in the vehicle. The driver must also have an emergency kit for controlling leaks in dome cover plate fittings on the cargo tank.

- **Stop Before Railroad Crossings**

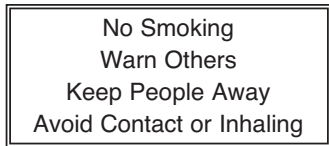
Stop before a railroad crossing if your vehicle:

- Is placarded.
- Carries any amount of chlorine.
- Has cargo tanks, whether loaded or empty, used for hazardous materials.

You must stop 15 to 50 feet before the nearest rail. Proceed only when you are sure no train is coming. Don't shift gears while crossing the tracks.

---

## 9.7 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS--EMERGENCIES



### ● Emergency Response Guidebook (ERG)

The Department of Transportation has a guidebook for firefighters, police, and industry workers on how to protect themselves and the public from hazardous materials. The guide is indexed by proper shipping name and hazardous materials identification number. Emergency personnel look for these things on the shipping paper. That is why it is vital that the proper shipping name, identification number, label, and placards are correct.

### ● Accidents/Incidents

As a professional driver, your job at the scene of an accident is to:

- Keep people away from the scene.
- Limit the spread of material, **only if you can safely do so.**
- Communicate the danger of the hazardous materials to emergency response personnel.
- Provide emergency responders with the shipping papers and emergency response information.

Follow this checklist:

- Check to see that your driving partner is OK.
- Keep shipping papers with you.
- Keep people far away and upwind.
- Warn others of the danger.
- Send for help.
- Follow your employer's instructions.

### ● Fires

You might have to control minor truck fires on the road. **However, unless you have the training and equipment to do so safely, don't fight hazardous materials fires.** Dealing with hazardous materials fires requires special training and protective gear.

When you discover a fire, send for help. You may use the fire extinguisher to keep minor truck fires from spreading to cargo before firefighters arrive. Feel trailer doors to see if they are hot before opening them. If hot, you may have a cargo fire and should not open the doors. Opening doors lets air in and may make the fire flare up. Without air, many fires only smolder until firemen arrive, doing less damage. If your cargo is already on fire, it is not safe to fight the fire. Keep the shipping papers with you to give to emergency personnel as soon as they arrive. **Warn other people of the danger and keep them away.**

If you discover a cargo leak, identify the hazardous materials leaking by using shipping papers, labels, or package location. **Do not touch any leaking material--many people injure themselves by touching hazardous materials.** Do not try to identify the material or find the source of a leak by smell. Toxic gases can destroy your sense of smell and can injure or kill you even if they don't smell. Never eat, drink, or smoke around a leak or spill.

If hazardous materials are spilling from your vehicle, do not move it any more than safety requires. You may move off the road and away from places where people gather, if doing so serves safety. Only move your vehicle if you can do so without danger to yourself or others.

Never continue driving with hazardous materials leaking from your vehicle in order to find a phone booth, truck stop, help, or similar reason. Remember, the carrier pays for the cleanup of contaminated parking lots, roadways, and drainage ditches. The costs are enormous, so don't leave a lengthy trail of contamination. If hazardous materials are spilling from your vehicle:

- Park it.
- Secure the area.
- Stay there.
- Send someone else for help.

When sending someone for help, give that person:

- A description of the emergency.
- Your exact location and direction of travel.
- Your name, the carrier's name, and the name of the community or city where your terminal is located.
- The proper shipping name, hazard class, and identification number of the hazardous materials, if you know them.

This is a lot for someone to remember. It is a good idea to write it all down for the person you send for help. The

emergency response team must know these things to find you and to handle the emergency. They may have to travel miles to get to you. This information will help them to bring the right equipment the first time, without having to go back for it.

Never move your vehicle, if doing so will cause contamination or damage the vehicle. Keep downwind and away from roadside rests, truckstops, cafes, and businesses. Never try to repack leaking containers. Unless you have the training and equipment to repair leaks safely, don't try it. Call your dispatcher or supervisor for instructions and, if needed, emergency personnel.

### • Responses to Specific Hazards

**Class 1 (Explosives).** If your vehicle has a breakdown or accident while carrying explosives, warn others of the danger. Keep bystanders away. Do not allow smoking or open fire near the vehicle. If there is a fire, warn everyone of the danger of explosion.

Remove all explosives before separating vehicles involved in a collision. Place the explosives at least 200 feet from the vehicles and occupied buildings. Stay a safe distance away.

**Class 2 (Compressed Gases).** If compressed gas is leaking from your vehicle, warn others of the danger. Only permit those involved in removing the hazard or wreckage to get close. You must notify the shipper if compressed gas is involved in any accident.

Unless you are fueling machinery used in road construction or maintenance, do not transfer a flammable compressed gas from one tank to another on any public roadway.

**Class 3 (Flammable Liquids).** If you are transporting a flammable liquid and have an accident or your vehicle breaks down, prevent bystanders from gathering. Warn people of the danger. Keep them from smoking.

Never transport a leaking cargo tank farther than needed to reach a safe place. Get off the roadway if you can do so safely. Don't transfer flammable liquid from one vehicle to another on a public roadway except in an emergency.

**Class 4 (Flammable Solids) and Class 5 (Oxidizing Materials).** If a flammable solid or oxidizing material spills, warn others of the fire hazard. Do not open smoldering packages of flammable solids. Remove them from the vehicle if you can safely do so. Also, remove unbroken packages if it will decrease the fire hazard.

**Class 6 (Poisonous Materials and Infectious Substances).** It is your job to protect yourself, other people, and property from harm. Remember that many products classed as poison are also flammable. If you think a Division

2.3 (poison gases) or Division 6.1 (poison materials) might be flammable, take the added precautions needed for flammable liquids or gases. Do not allow smoking, open flame, or welding. Warn others of the hazards of fire, of inhaling vapors, or coming in contact with the poison.

A vehicle involved in a leak of Division 2.3 (Poison Gases) or Division 6.1 (Poisons) must be checked for stray poison before being used again.

If Division 6.2 (infectious substances) package is damaged in handling or transportation, you should immediately contact your supervisor. Packages which appear to be damaged or shows signs of leakage should not be accepted.

**Class 7 (Radioactive Materials).** If radioactive material is involved in a leak or broken package, tell your dispatcher or supervisor as soon as possible. If there is a spill, or if an internal container might be damaged, do not touch or inhale the material. Do not use the vehicle until it is cleaned and checked with a survey meter.

**Class 8 (Corrosive Materials).** If corrosives spill or leak during transportation, be careful to avoid further damage or injury when handling the containers. Parts of the vehicle exposed to a corrosive liquid must be thoroughly washed with water. After unloading, wash out the interior as soon as possible before reloading.

If continuing to transport a leaking tank would be unsafe, get off the road. If safe to do so, try to contain any liquid leaking from the vehicle. Keep bystanders away from the liquid and its fumes. Do everything possible to prevent injury to others.

### • Required Notification

The National Response Center helps coordinate emergency response to chemical hazards. It is a resource to the local police and firefighters. It maintains a 24-hour toll-free line. You or your employer must phone when any of the following occur **as a direct result of a hazardous materials incident:**

- A person is killed.
- An injured person requires hospitalization.
- Estimated property damage exceeds \$50,000.
- The general public is evacuated for one or more hours.
- One or more major transportation arteries or facilities are closed or shut down for one hour or more.

- Fire, breakage, spillage, or suspected radioactive contamination occurs.
- Fire, breakage, spillage or suspected contamination occurs involving shipment of etiologic agents (bacteria or toxins).
- A situation exists of such a nature (e.g., continuing danger to life exists at the scene of an incident) that, in the judgment of the carrier, should be reported.

### National Response Center (800) 424-8801

Persons telephoning the National Response Center should be ready to give:

- Their name.
- Name and address of the carrier they work for.
- Phone number where they can be reached.
- Date, time, and location of incident.
- The extent of injuries, if any.
- Classification, name, and quantity of hazardous materials involved, if such information is available.
- Type of incident and nature of hazardous materials involvement and whether a continuing danger to life exists at the scene.

If a reportable quantity of hazardous substance was involved, the caller should give the name of the shipper and the quantity of the hazardous substance discharged.

Be prepared to give your employer the required information as well. Carriers must make detailed written reports within 30 days of an incident.

### CHEMTREC 800 424-9300

The Chemical Transportation Emergency Center (CHEMTREC) in Washington also has a 24-hour toll-free line. CHEMTREC was created to provide emergency personnel with technical information about the physical properties of hazardous materials. The National Response Center and CHEMTREC are in close communication. If you call either one, they will tell the other about the problem when appropriate.

### Test Your Knowledge

1. If your placarded trailer has dual tires, how often should you check the tires?
2. What is a safe haven?
3. How close to the travelled part of the roadway can you park with Division 1.2 or 1.3 Explosive B?
4. How close can you park to a bridge, tunnel, or building with the same load?
5. What type of fire extinguisher must placarded vehicles carry?
6. You're hauling 100 pounds of **Division 4.3 (dangerous when wet)** material. Do you need to stop before railroad crossings?
7. At a rest area you discover your hazardous materials shipment is slowly leaking from the vehicle. There's no phone around. What should you do?
8. What is the Emergency Response Guide (ERG)?

These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer them all, re-read Sections 9.6 and 9.7.

**Table A**

(Note: You will not be tested on the numbers in this table).

### Radioactive Separation Table

Do not leave radioactive yellow--II or yellow--III labeled packages near people, animals, or film longer than shown in this table.

Total Transport Index	Minimum Distance in Feet to nearest undeveloped film					To People or cargo compartment partitions
	0-2 Hours	2-4 Hours	4-8 Hours	8-12 Hours	Over 12 Hours	
None	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.1 to 1.01	2	3	4	5	1	
1.1 to 5.03	4	6	8	11	2	
5.1 to 10.0	4	6	9	11	15	3
10.1 to 20.0	5	8	12	16	22	4
20.1 to 30.0	7	10	15	20	29	5
30.1 to 40.0	8	11	17	22	33	6
40.1 to 50.0	9	12	19	24	36	7

**Table B**

(Note: You will not be tested on this table).

### Table of Hazard Class Definitions

#### Kinds of Hazardous Materials

Hazardous materials are categorized into nine major hazard classes and additional categories for consumer commodities and combustible liquids. The classes of hazardous materials are as follows:

CLASS	CLASS NAME	EXAMPLE
1	Explosives	Ammunition, Dynamite, Fireworks
2	Gases	Propane, Oxygen, Helium
3	Flammable	Gasoline Fuel, Acetone
4	Flammable Solids	Matches, Fusees
5	Oxidizers	Ammonium Nitrate, Hydrogen, Peroxide
6	Poisons	Pesticides, Arsenic
7	Radioactive	Uranium, Plutonium
8	Corrosives	Hydrochloric Acid, Battery Acid
9	Miscellaneous Hazardous Materials	Formaldehyde, Asbestos
None	ORM-D (Other Related Material - Domestic)	Hair Spray or Charcoal
None	Combustible Liquids	Fuel Oils, Lighter Fluid

#### Hazardous Materials Glossary

**This glossary presents definitions of certain terms used in this section. A complete glossary of terms can be found in the federal Hazardous Materials Rules 49 CFR 171.8. You should have an up-to-date copy of these rules for your reference.**

**(Note: You will not be tested on this glossary.)**

Sec. 171.8 Definitions and abbreviations.

**Bulk packaging** means a packaging, other than a vessel, or a barge, including a transport vehicle or freight container, in which hazardous materials are loaded with no intermediate form of containment and which has:

- (1) A maximum capacity greater than 450 L (119 gallons) as a receptacle for a liquid;
- (2) A maximum net mass greater than 400 kg (882 pounds) or a maximum capacity greater than 450 L (119 gallons) as a receptacle for a solid; or
- (3) A water capacity greater than 454 kg (1000

pounds as a receptacle for a gas as defined in Sec 173.115.

**Cargo tank** means a bulk packaging which:

- (1) Is a tank intended primarily for the carriage of liquids or gases and includes appurtenances, reinforcements, fittings, and closures for "tank", see 49 CFR 178.345-1c, 178.337-1, or 178.338-1, as applicable;
- (2) Is permanently attached to or forms a part of a motor vehicle, or is not permanently attached to a motor vehicle but which, by reason of its size, construction, or attachment to a motor vehicle is loaded or unloaded without being removed from the motor vehicle; and
- (3) Is not fabricated under a specification for cylinders, portable tanks, tank cars, or multi-unit tank car tanks.

**Carrier** means a person engaged in the transportation of passengers or property by:

- (1) Land or water as a common, contract, or private carrier, or
- (2) Civil aircraft.

**Consignee** means the business or person to whom a shipment is delivered.

**Division** means a subdivision of a hazard class

**EPA** means U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

**FMCSR** means the Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations.

**Freight container** means a reusable container having a volume of 64 cubic feet or more, designed and constructed to permit being lifted with its contents intact, and intended primarily for containment of packages in unit form during transportation.

**Fuel tank** means a tank, other than a cargo tank, used to transport flammable or combustible liquid or compressed gas for the purpose of supplying fuel for propulsion of the transport vehicle to which it is attached, or for the operation of other equipment on the transport vehicle

**Gross weight or gross mass** means the weight of a packaging plus the weight of its contents.

**Hazard class** means the category of hazard assigned to a hazardous material under the definitional criteria of Part 173 and the provisions of the Sec. 172.101 Table. A material may meet the defining criteria for more than one hazard class but is assigned to only one hazard class.

**Hazardous materials** means a substance or material which has been determined by the Secretary of Transportation to be capable of posing an unreasonable risk

to health, safety, and property when transported in commerce, and which has been so designated. The term includes hazardous substances, hazardous wastes, marine pollutants, and elevated temperature materials as defined in this section, materials designated as hazardous under the provisions of Sec. 172.101 and 172.102, and materials that meet the defining criteria for hazard classes and divisions in Part 173.

**Hazardous substance** means a material, including its mixtures and solutions, that:

- (1) Is listed in Appendix A to Sec. 172.101;
- (2) Is in a quantity, in one package, which equals or exceeds the reportable quantity (RQ) listed in Appendix A to Sec. 172.101; and
- (3) When in a mixture or solution -
  - (i) For radionuclides, conforms to paragraph 6 of Appendix A to Sec. 172.101.
  - (ii) For other than radionuclides, is in a concentration by weight which equals or exceeds the concentration corresponding to the RQ of the material, as shown in the following table:

RQ POUNDS (KILOGRAMS)	CONCENTRATION BY WEIGHT	
	Percent	PPM
5,000 (2270)	10	100,000
1,000 (454)	2	20,000
100 (45.4)	0.2	2,000
10 (4.54)	0.02	200
1 (0.454)	0.002	20

This definition does not apply to petroleum products that are lubricants or fuels (see 40 CFR 300.6).

**Hazardous waste**, for the purposes of this chapter, means any material that is subject to the Hazardous Waste Manifest Requirements of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency specified in 40 CFR Part 262.

**Limited quantity**, when specified as such in a section applicable to a particular material, means the maximum amount of hazardous materials for which there may be specific labeling or packaging exception.

**Marking** means the descriptive name, identification number, instructions, cautions, weight, specification, or UN marks or combinations thereof, required by this subchapter on outer packagings of hazardous materials.

**Mixture** means a material composed of more than one chemical compound or element.

**Name of contents** means the proper shipping name as specified in Sec. 172.101.

**Non-bulk packaging** means a packaging which has:

- (1) A maximum capacity of 450 L (119 gallons) as a receptacle for a liquid;
- (2) A maximum net mass less than 400 kg (882 pounds) and a maximum capacity of 450 L 119 gallons or less as a receptacle for a solid; or
- (3) A water capacity greater than 454 kg (1,000 pounds) or less as a receptacle for a gas as defined in Sec. 173.115.

**N.O.S.** means not otherwise specified.

**Outage or ullage** means the amount by which a packaging falls short of being liquid full, usually expressed in percent by volume.

**Portable tank** means a bulk packaging (except a cylinder having a water capacity of 1,000 pounds or less) designed primarily to be loaded onto, or on, or temporarily attached to a transport vehicle or ship and equipped with skids, mountings, or accessories to facilitate handling of the tank by mechanical means. It does not include a cargo tank, tank car, multi-unit tank car tank, or trailer carrying 3AX, 3AAX, or 3T cylinders.

**Proper shipping name** means the name of the hazardous materials shown in Roman print, not italics, in Sec. 172.101.

**P.s.i. or psi** means pounds per square inch.

**P.s.i.a. or psia** means pounds per square inch absolute.

**Reportable quantity (RQ)** means the quantity specified in Column 3 of the Appendix to Sec. 172.101 for any material identified in Column 1 of the Appendix.

**RSPA** means the Research and Special Programs Administration, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590.

**Shipper's certification** means a statement on a shipping paper, signed by the shipper, saying he/she prepared the shipment properly according to law.

"This is to certify that the above named materials are properly classified, described, packaged, marked and labeled, and are in proper condition for transportation according to the applicable regulations or the Department of Transportation." or

"I hereby declare that the contents of this consignment are fully and accurately described above the proper shipping name and are classified, packed, marked and labeled, and are in all respects in proper condition



for transport by \* according to applicable international and national government regulations.”

\*words may be inserted here to indicate mode of transportation (rail, aircraft, motor vehicle, vessel)

**Shipping paper** means a shipping order, bill of lading, manifest, or other shipping document serving a similar purpose and containing the information required by Sec 172.202, 172.203, and 172.204.

**Technical name** means a recognized chemical name or microbiological name currently used in scientific and technical handbooks, journals, and texts.

**Transport vehicle** means a cargo-carrying vehicle such as an automobile, van, tractor, truck, semi-trailer, tank car, or rail car used for the transportation of cargo by any mode. Each cargo-carrying body trailer, rail car, etc. is a separate transport vehicle.

**UN standard packaging** means a specification packaging conforming to the requirements in Subpart L and M of Part 178.

**UN** means United Nations.

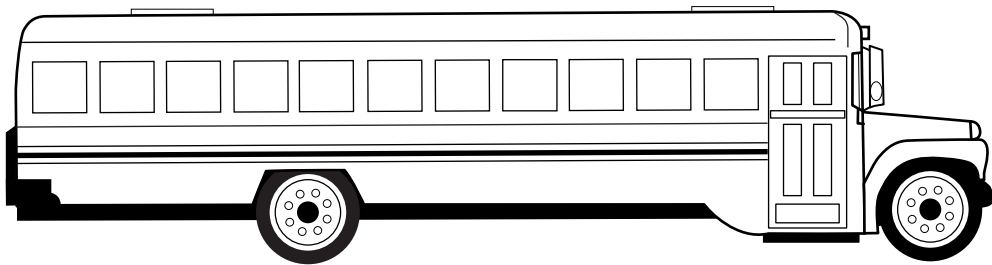


---

# Section 10

---

## Driving School Buses



THIS SECTION IS FOR DRIVERS NEEDING  
SCHOOL BUS ENDORSEMENT

# Section 10: School Buses

## This Section Covers

- **Danger Zones and Use of Mirrors**
- **Loading and Unloading**
- **Emergency Exit and Evacuation**
- **Railroad-Highway Grade Crossings**
- **Student Management**
- **Antilock Braking Systems**
- **Special Safety Situation**

School bus drivers must have a commercial driver license if they drive a vehicle designed to transport (seat) 16 or more persons, including the driver.

School bus drivers must have a school bus endorsement in addition to a passenger endorsement on their commercial driver's license (CDL). To get the school bus endorsement, you must pass a knowledge test on sections 2, 4 and 10 of this manual. (If your school bus has air brakes, you must also pass a knowledge test on Section 5.) You must also pass the skills test required for the class of school bus you drive or intend to drive.

This section does NOT provide information on all the federal and state requirements needed before you drive a school bus. You should be thoroughly familiar with all specific school bus procedures, laws and regulations in your state and local school district.

## 10.1 - DANGER ZONES AND USE OF MIRRORS

### 10.1.1 - Danger Zones

The danger zone is the area anywhere outside of the bus where children are in the most danger of being hit, either by another vehicle or their own bus. The danger zones extend as much as 30 feet from the front bumper, 10 feet from the left and right sides of the bus and 10 feet behind the rear bumper of the school bus. In addition, the area to the left of the bus is always considered dangerous because of passing vehicles. Figure 10.1 illustrates these danger zones.

### 10.1.2 - Correct Mirror Adjustment

Proper adjustment and use of all mirrors is vital to the safe operation of the school bus in order to observe the danger zone around the bus and look for students, traffic, and other objects in this area. You should always check each mirror before operating the school bus to obtain maximum viewing

area consistent with the vision requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard NO. 111, "Mirror Systems". If necessary, have the mirrors adjusted.

## THE DANGER ZONES

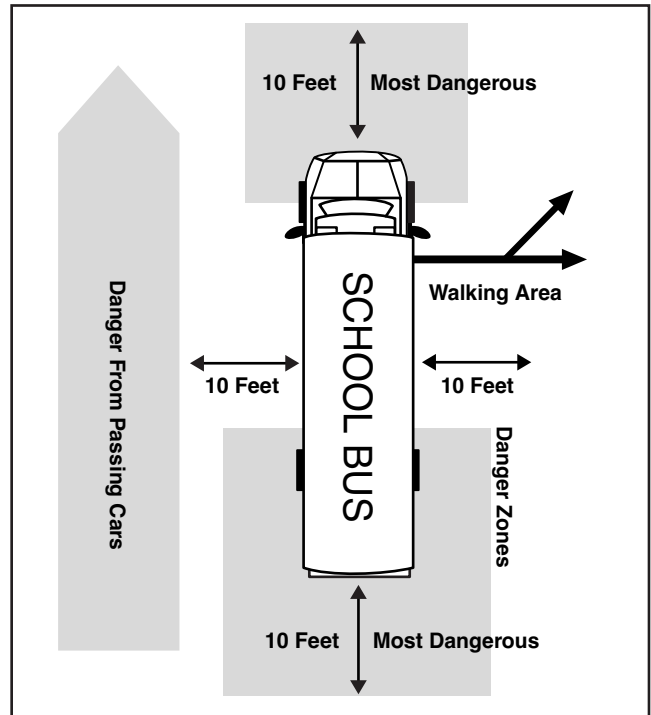


Figure 10.1

### 10.1.3 - Outside Left and Right Side Flat Mirrors

These mirrors are mounted at the left and right front corners of the bus at the side or front of the windshield. They are used to monitor traffic, check clearances and students on the sides and to the rear of the bus. There is a blind spot immediately below and in front of each mirror and directly in back of the rear bumper. The blind spot behind the bus could extend up to 400 feet depending on the width of the bus.

Ensure that the mirrors are properly adjusted so you can see:

- 200 feet or 4 bus lengths behind the bus.
- Along the sides of the bus.
- The rear tires touching the ground.

Figure 10.2 shows how both the outside left and right side flat mirrors should be adjusted.

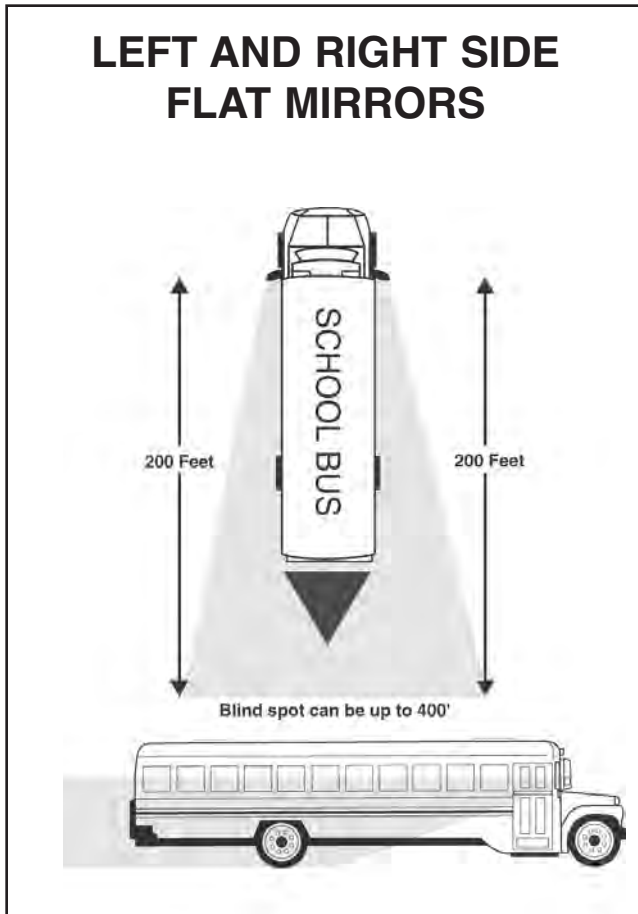


Figure 10.2

#### 10.1.4 - Outside Left and Right Side Convex Mirrors

The convex mirrors are located below the outside flat mirrors. They are used to monitor the left and right sides at a wide angle. They provide a view of traffic, clearances, and students at the side of the bus. These mirrors present a view of people and objects that does not accurately reflect their size and distance from the bus.

Ensure that the mirrors are properly adjusted so you can see:

- The entire side of the bus up to the mirror mounts.
- Front of the rear tires touching the ground.
- At least one traffic lane on either side of the bus.

Figure 10.3 shows how both the outside left and right side convex mirrors should be adjusted.

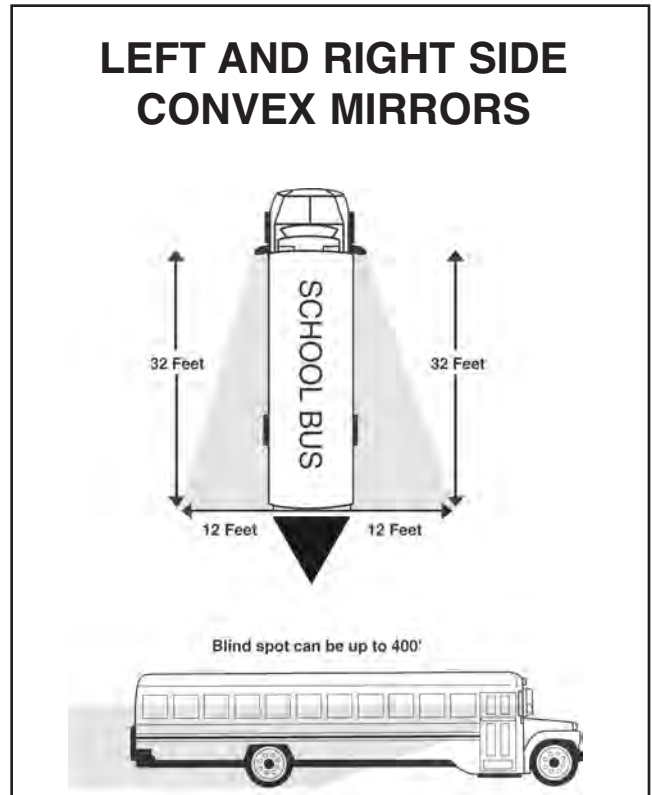


Figure 10.3

#### 10.1.5 - Outside Left and Right Side Cross View Mirrors

These mirrors are mounted on both left and right front corners of the bus. They are used to see the “danger zone” area directly in front of the bus that is not visible by direct vision, and to view the “danger zone” areas to the left side and right side of the bus, including the service door and front wheel areas. The mirror presents a view of people and objects that does not accurately reflect their size and distance from the bus. The driver must ensure that these mirrors are properly adjusted.

Ensure that the mirrors are properly adjusted so you can see:

- The entire area in front of the bus from the front bumper at ground level to a point where direct vision is possible.
- Direct vision and mirror view vision should overlap.
- The right and left front tires touching the ground.
- The area from the front of the bus to the service door.
- These mirrors, along with the convex and flat mirrors, should be viewed in a logical sequence to ensure that a child or object is not in any of the danger zones.

Figures 10.4a and 10.4b illustrate how the left and right side cross view mirrors should be adjusted.

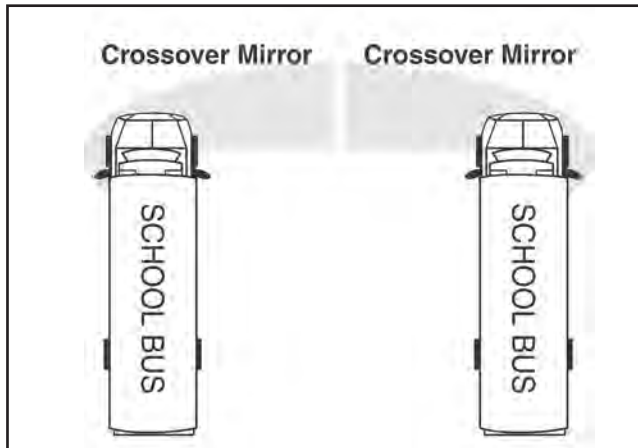


Figure 10.4a

Figure 10.4b

### 10.1.6 - Overhead Inside Rearview Mirror

This mirror is mounted directly above the windshield on the driver's side area of the bus. This mirror is used to monitor passenger activity inside the bus. It may provide limited visibility directly in back of the bus if the bus is equipped with a glass-bottomed rear emergency door. There is a blind spot area directly behind the driver's seat as well as a large blind spot area that begins at the rear bumper and could extend up to 400 feet or more behind the bus. You must use the exterior side mirrors to monitor traffic that approaches and enters this area.

Ensure that the mirrors are properly adjusted so you can see:

- The top of the rear window in the top of the mirror.
- All of the students, including the heads of the students right behind you.

## 10.2 - LOADING AND UNLOADING

More students are killed while getting on or off a school bus each year than are killed as passengers inside of a school bus. As a result, knowing what to do before, during, and after loading or unloading students is critical. This section will give you procedures to help you avoid unsafe conditions which could result in injuries and fatalities during and after loading and unloading students.

### 10.2.1 - Approaching the Stop

Each school district establishes official routes and official school bus stops. All stops should be approved by the school district prior to making the stop. You should never change the location of a bus stop without written approval from the appropriate school district official.

You must use extreme caution when approaching a school bus stop. You are in a very demanding situation when entering these areas. It is critical that you understand and follow all state and local laws and regulations regarding approaching a school bus stop. This would involve the proper use of mirrors, alternating flashing lamps, and when equipped, the moveable stop signal arm and crossing control arm.

When approaching the stop, you should:

- Approach cautiously at a slow rate of speed.
- Look for pedestrians, traffic, or other objects before, during, and after coming to a stop.
- Continuously check all mirrors.
- If the school bus is so equipped, activate alternating flashing amber warning lamps before the school bus stop in accordance with state law.
- Continuously check mirrors to monitor the danger zones for students, traffic, and other objects.
- Move as far as possible to the right on the traveled portion of the roadway.
- Bring school bus to a full stop with the front bumper at least 10 feet away from students at the designated stop. This forces the students to walk to the bus so you have a better view of their movements.
- Place transmission in Park, or if there is no Park shift point, in Neutral and set the parking brake at each stop.
- Open service door, if possible, enough to activate alternating red lamps when traffic is a safe distance from the school bus.
- Make a final check to see that all traffic has stopped before completely opening the door and signaling students to approach.

### 10.2.2 - Loading Procedures

- Perform a safe stop as described in subsection 10.2.1.
- Students should wait in a designated location for the school bus, facing the bus as it approaches.
- Students should board the bus only when signaled by the driver.
- Monitor all mirrors continuously.
- Count the number of students at the bus stop and be sure all board the bus. If possible, know names of students at each stop. If there is a student missing, ask the other students where the student is.
- Have the students board the school bus slowly, in single file, and use the handrail. The dome light should be on while loading in the dark.
- Wait until students are seated and facing forward before moving the bus.
- Check all mirrors. Make certain no one is running to catch the bus.
- If you cannot account for a student outside, secure the bus, take the key, and check around and underneath the bus.
- When all students are accounted for, prepare to leave by:

- Closing the door.
- Engaging the transmission.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Turning off alternating flashing red lamps.
- Turning on left turn signal.
- Allowing congested traffic to disperse.
- Checking all mirrors again.

- When it is safe, move the bus to enter traffic flow and continue the route.

The loading procedure is essentially the same wherever you load students, but there are slight differences. When students are loading at the school campus, you should:

- Turn off the ignition switch.
- Remove key if leaving driver's compartment.
- Position yourself to supervise loading as required or recommended by your state or local regulations.

### **10.2.3 - Unloading Procedures on the Route**

- Perform a safe stop at designated unloading areas as described in subsection 10.2.1.
- Have the students remain seated until told to exit.
- Check all mirrors.
- Count the number of students while unloading to confirm the location of all students before pulling away from the stop.
- Tell students to exit the bus and walk at least 10 feet away from the side of the bus to a position where the driver can plainly see all students.
- Check all mirrors again. Make sure no students are around or returning to the bus.
- If you cannot account for a student outside the bus, secure the bus, and check around and underneath the bus.
- When all students are accounted for, prepare to leave by:
  - Closing the door.
  - Engaging transmission.
  - Releasing parking brake.
  - Turning off alternating flashing red lamps.
  - Turning on left turn signal.
  - Allowing congested traffic to disperse.
  - Checking all mirrors again.

- When it is safe, move the bus, enter the traffic flow and continue the route.

**Note:** If you have missed a student's unloading stop, do not back up. Be sure to follow local procedures.

- Additional Procedures for Students That Must Cross the Roadway

You should understand what students should do when exit-

ing a school bus and crossing the street in front of the bus. In addition, the school bus driver should understand that students might not always do what they are supposed to do. If a student or students must cross the roadway, they should follow these procedures:

- Walk approximately 10 feet away from the side of the school bus to a position where you can see them.
- Walk to a location at least 10 feet in front of the right corner of the bumper, but still remaining away from the front of the school bus.
- Stop at the right edge of the roadway. You should be able to see the student's feet.

- When students reach the edge of the roadway, they should:

- Stop and look in all directions, making sure the roadway is clear and is safe.
- Check to see if the red flashing lamps on the bus are still flashing.
- Wait for your signal before crossing the roadway.

- Upon your signal, the students should:

- Cross far enough in front of the school bus to be in your view.
- Walk to the left edge of the school bus, stop, and look again for your signal to continue to cross the roadway.
- Look for traffic in both directions, making sure roadway is clear.
- Proceed across the roadway, continuing to look in all directions.

### **Notes:**

1. The school bus driver should enforce any state or local regulations or recommendations concerning student actions outside the school bus.
2. It is important for the driver to understand that any hand or other signal that is given to a student also could be misinterpreted by motorists that are stopped in the area.

### **10.2.4 - Unloading Procedures at School**

State and local laws and regulations regarding unloading students at schools, particularly in situations where such activities take place in the school parking lot or other location that is off the traveled roadway, are often different than unloading along the school bus route. It is important that the school bus driver understands and obeys state and local laws and regulations. The following procedures are meant to be general guidelines.

When unloading at the school you should follow these procedures:

- Perform a safe stop at designated unloading areas as described in subsection 10.2.1.
- Secure the bus by:
  - Turning off the ignition switch.
  - Removing key if leaving driver's compartment.
- Have the students remain seated until told to exit.
- Position yourself to supervise unloading as required or recommended by your state or local regulations.
- Have students exit in orderly fashion.
- Observe students as they step from bus to see that all move promptly away from the unloading area.
- Walk through the bus and check for hiding/sleeping students and items left by students.
- Check all mirrors. Make certain no students are returning to the bus.
- If you cannot account for a student outside the bus and the bus is secure, check around and underneath the bus.
- When all students are accounted for, prepare to leave by:
  - Closing the door.
  - Fastening safety belt.
  - Starting engine.
  - Engaging the transmission.
  - Releasing the parking brake.
  - Turning off alternating flashing red lamps.
  - Turning on left turn signal.
  - Allowing congested traffic to disperse.
  - Checking all mirrors again.
- When it is safe, pull away from the unloading area.

### **10.2.5 - Special Dangers of Loading and Unloading**

**Dropped or Forgotten Objects.** Always focus on students as they approach the bus and watch for any who disappear from sight.

Students may drop an object near the bus during loading and unloading. Stopping to pick up the object, or returning to pick up the object, may cause the student to disappear from the driver's sight at a very dangerous moment.

Students should be told to leave any dropped object and move to a point of safety out of the danger zones and attempt to get the driver's attention to retrieve the object.

**Handrail Hang-ups.** Students have been injured or killed when clothing, accessories, or even parts of their body get caught in the handrail or door as they exited the bus. You should closely observe all students exiting the bus to confirm that they are in a safe location prior to moving the bus.

### **10.2.6 - Post-trip Inspection**

When your route or school activity trip is finished, you should

conduct a post-trip inspection of the bus.

You should walk through the bus and around the bus looking for the following:

- Articles left on the bus.
- Sleeping students.
- Open windows and doors.
- Mechanical/operational problems with the bus, with special attention to items that are unique to school buses – mirror systems, flashing warning, damage or vandalism.

Any problems or special situations should be reported immediately to your supervisor or school authorities.

---

## **10.3 - EMERGENCY EXIT AND EVACUATION**

An emergency situation can happen to anyone, anytime, anywhere. It could be a crash, a stalled school bus on a rail-road-highway crossing or in a high-speed intersection, an electrical fire in the engine compartment, a medical emergency to a student on the school bus, etc. Knowing what to do in an emergency—before, during and after an evacuation—can mean the difference between life and death.

### **10.3.1 - Planning for Emergencies**

#### **Determine Need to Evacuate Bus**

The first and most important consideration is for you to recognize the hazard. If time permits, school bus drivers should contact their dispatcher to explain the situation before making a decision to evacuate the school bus.

As a general rule, student safety and control is best maintained by keeping students on the bus during an emergency and/or impending crisis situation, if so doing does not expose them to unnecessary risk or injury. Remember, the decision to evacuate the bus must be a timely one.

A decision to evacuate should include consideration of the following conditions:

- Is there a fire or danger of fire?
- Is there a smell of leaking fuel?
- Is there a chance the bus could be hit by other vehicles?
- Is the bus in the path of a sighted tornado or rising waters?
- Are there downed power lines?
- Would removing students expose them to speeding traffic, severe weather, or a dangerous environment such as downed power lines?
- Would moving students complicate injuries such as neck and back injuries and fractures?



- Is there a hazardous spill involved?
- Sometimes, it may be safer to remain on the bus and not come in contact with the material.

**Mandatory Evacuations.** The driver must evacuate the bus when:

- The bus is on fire or there is a threat of a fire.
- The bus is stalled on or adjacent to a railroad-highway crossing.
- The position of the bus may change and increase the danger.
- There is an imminent danger of collision.
- There is a need to quickly evacuate because of a hazardous materials spill.

### 10.3.2 - Evacuation Procedures

**Be Prepared and Plan Ahead.** When possible, assign two responsible, older student assistants to each emergency exit. Teach them how to assist the other students off the bus. Assign another student assistant to lead the students to a “safe place” after evacuation. However, you must recognize that there may not be older, responsible students on the bus at the time of the emergency. Therefore, emergency evacuation procedures must be explained to all students. This includes ensuring that they know the location of and operation of the various emergency exits, and the importance of listening to and following all instructions given by you.

Some tips to determine a safe place:

- A safe place for the students will be at least 100 feet off the road in the direction of oncoming traffic. This will keep them from being hit by debris if another vehicle collides with the bus.
- Lead students upwind of the bus if fire is present.
- Lead students as far away from railroad tracks as possible and in the direction of any oncoming train.
- Lead students upwind of the bus at least 300 feet if there is a risk from spilled hazardous materials.
- If the bus is in the direct path of a sighted tornado and evacuation is ordered, escort students to a nearby ditch or culvert if shelter in a building is not readily available, and direct them to lie face down, hands covering their head. They should be far enough away so the bus cannot topple on them.
- Avoid areas that are subject to flash floods.

**General Procedures.** Determine if evacuation is in the best interest of safety.

- Determine the best type of evacuation:
  - ▶ Front, rear or side door evacuation, or some combination of doors.
  - ▶ Roof or window evacuation.

- Secure the bus by:

- ▶ Placing transmission in Park, or if there is no shift point, in Neutral.
- ▶ Setting parking brakes.
- ▶ Shutting off the engine.
- ▶ Removing ignition key.
- ▶ Activating hazard-warning lamps.

- If time allows, notify dispatch office of evacuation location, conditions, and type of assistance needed.
- Dangle radio microphone or telephone out of driver’s window for later use, if operable.
- If no radio, or radio is inoperable, dispatch a passing motorist or area resident to call for help. As a last resort, dispatch two older, responsible students to go for help.
- Order the evacuation.
- Evacuate students from the bus.

- ▶ Do not move a student you believe may have suffered a neck or spinal injury unless his or her life is in immediate danger.
- ▶ Special procedures must be used to move neck spinal injury victims to prevent further injury.

- Direct a student assistant to lead students to the nearest safe place.
- Walk through the bus to ensure no students remain on the bus. Retrieve emergency equipment.
- Join waiting students. Account for all students and check for their safety.
- Protect the scene. Set out emergency warning devices as necessary and appropriate.
- Prepare information for emergency responders.

---

## 10.4 - RAILROAD-HIGHWAY CROSSINGS

### 10.4.1 - Types of Crossings

**Passive Crossings.** This type of crossing does not have any type of traffic control device. You must stop at these crossings and follow proper procedures. However, the decision to proceed rests entirely in your hands. Passive crossings require you to recognize the crossing, search for any train using the tracks and decide if there is sufficient clear space to cross safely. Passive crossings have yellow circular advance warning signs, pavement markings and crossbucks to assist you in recognizing a crossing.

**Active Crossings.** This type of crossing has a traffic control device installed at the crossing to regulate traffic. These active devices can include flashing red lights, flashing red lights with bells and flashing red lights with bells and gates.

### 10.4.2 - Warning Signs and Devices

**Advance Warning Signs.** The round, black-on-yellow



warning sign is placed ahead of a public railroad-highway crossing. The advance warning sign tells you to slow down, look and listen for the train, and be prepared to stop at the tracks if a train is coming. See Figure 10.5.



Figure 10.5

**Pavement Markings.** Pavement markings mean the same as the advance warning sign. They consist of an “X” with the letters “RR” and a no-passing marking on two-lane roads. See Figure 10.6.

There is also a no passing zone sign on two-lane roads. There may be a white stop line painted on the pavement before the railroad tracks. The front of the school bus must remain behind this line while stopped at the crossing.



Figure 10.6

**Crossbuck Signs.** This sign marks a passive crossing. It requires you to yield the right-of-way to the train. When the road crosses over more than one set of tracks, a sign below the crossbuck indicates the number of tracks. See Figure 10.7.

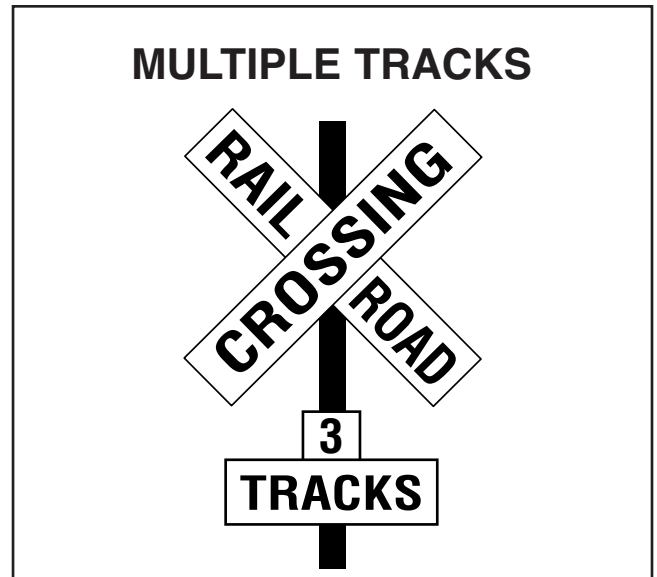


Figure 10.7

**Flashing Red Light Signals.** At many active highway-rail grade crossings, the crossbuck sign has flashing red lights and bells. When the lights begin to flash, stop! A train is approaching. You are required to yield the right-of-way to the train. If there is more than one track, make sure all tracks are clear before crossing. See Figure 10.8.

**Gates.** Many active railroad-highway crossings have gates with flashing red lights and bells. Stop when the lights begin to flash and before the gate lowers across the road lane. Remain stopped until the gates go up and the lights have stopped flashing. Proceed when it is safe. If the gate stays down after the train passes, do not drive around the gate. Instead, contact your dispatcher. See Figure 10.8.

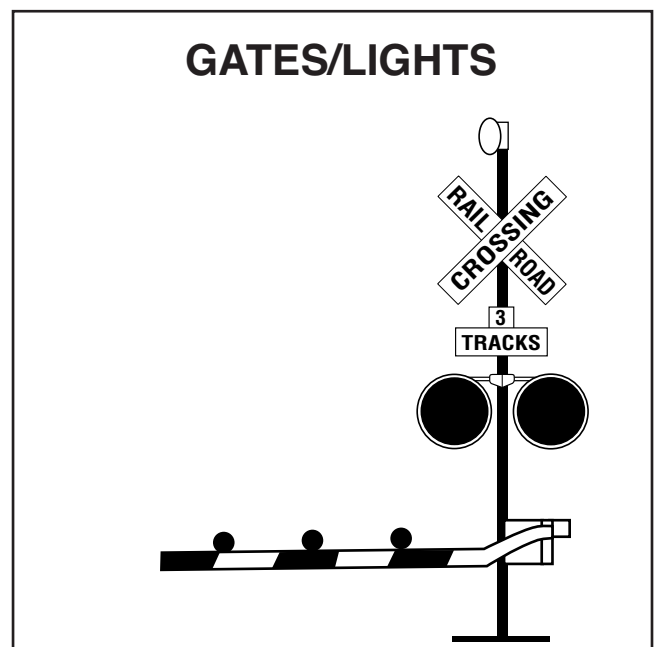


Figure 10.8

### 10.4.3 - Recommended Procedures

Each state has laws and regulations governing how school buses must operate at railroad-highway crossings. It is important for you to understand and obey these state laws and regulations. In general, school buses must stop at all crossings, and ensure it is safe before proceeding across the tracks. The specific procedures required in each state vary.

A school bus is one of the safest vehicles on the highway. However, a school bus does not have the slightest edge when involved in a crash with a train. Because of a train's size and weight it cannot stop quickly. An emergency escape route does not exist for a train. You can prevent school bus/train crashes by following these recommended procedures.

- **Approaching the Crossing:**

- ▶ Slow down, including shifting to a lower gear in a manual transmission bus, and test your brakes.
- ▶ Activate hazard lamps approximately 200 feet before the crossing. Make sure your intentions are known.
- ▶ Scan your surroundings and check for traffic behind you.
- ▶ Stay to the right of the roadway if possible.
- ▶ Choose an escape route in the event of a brake failure or problems behind you.

- **At the Crossing:**

- ▶ Stop no closer than 15 feet and no farther than 50 feet from the nearest rail, where you have the best view of the tracks.
- ▶ Place the transmission in Park, or if there is no Park shift point, in Neutral and press down on the service brake or set the parking brakes.
- ▶ Turn off all radios and noisy equipment, and silence the passengers.
- ▶ Open the service door and driver's window. Look and listen for an approaching train.

- **Crossing the Track:**

- ▶ Check the crossing signals again before proceeding.
- ▶ At a multiple-track crossing, stop only before the first set of tracks. When you are sure no train is approaching on any track, proceed across all of the tracks until you have completely cleared them.
- ▶ Cross the tracks in a low gear. Do not change gears while crossing.
- ▶ If the gate comes down after you have started across, drive through it even if it means you will break the gate.

### 10.4.4 - Special Situations

**Bus Stalls or Trapped on Tracks.** If your bus stalls or is

trapped on the tracks, get everyone out of the bus and off the tracks immediately. Move everyone far from the bus at an angle, which is both away from the tracks and toward the train.

**Police Officer at the Crossing.** If a police officer is at the crossing, obey directions. If there is no police officer, and you believe the signal is malfunctioning, contact your dispatcher to report the situation and ask for instructions on how to proceed.

**Obstructed View of Tracks.** Plan your route so it provides maximum sight distance at highway-rail grade crossings. Do not attempt to cross the tracks unless you can see far enough down the track to know for certain that no trains are approaching. Be especially careful at "passive" crossings. Even if there are active railroad signals that indicate the tracks are clear, you must look and listen to be sure it is safe to proceed.

**Containment or Storage Areas.** If it won't fit, don't commit! Know the length of your bus and the size of the containment area at highway-rail crossings on the school bus route, as well as any crossing you encounter in the course of a school activity trip. When approaching a crossing with a signal or stop sign on the opposite side, pay attention to the amount of room there. Be certain the bus has enough containment or storage area to completely clear the railroad tracks on the other side if there is a need to stop. As a general rule, add 15 feet to the length of the school bus to determine an acceptable amount of containment or storage area.

---

## 10.5 - STUDENT MANAGEMENT

### 10.5.1 - Don't Deal With On-bus Problems When Loading and Unloading

In order to get students to and from school safely and on time, you need to be able to concentrate on the driving task.

Loading and unloading requires all your concentration. Don't take your eyes off what is happening outside the bus.

If there is a behavior problem on the bus, wait until the students unloading are safely off the bus and have moved away. If necessary, pull the bus over to handle the problem.

### 10.5.2 - Handling Serious Problems

Tips on handling serious problems:

- Follow your school's procedures for discipline or refusal of rights to ride the bus.
- Stop the bus. Park in a safe location off the road, perhaps a parking lot or a driveway.
- Secure the bus. Take the ignition key with you if you leave your seat.
- Stand up and speak respectfully to the offender or offenders. Speak in a courteous manner with a firm

voice. Remind the offender of the expected behavior.

- Do not show anger, but do show that you mean business.
  - If a change of seating is needed, request that the student move to a seat near you.
  - Never put a student off the bus except at school or at his or her designated school bus stop. If you feel that the offense is serious enough that you cannot safely drive the bus, calling for a school administrator or the police to come and remove the student may be appropriate. Always follow your state or local procedures for requesting assistance.
- 

## **10.6 – ANTILOCK BRAKING SYSTEMS**

### **10.6.1 - Vehicles Required to have Antilock Braking Systems**

The Department of Transportation requires that antilock braking systems be on:

- Air brakes vehicles, (trucks, buses, trailers and converter dollies) built on or after March 1, 1998.
- Hydraulically braked trucks and buses with a gross vehicle weight rating of 10,000 lbs or more built on or after March 1, 1999.

Many buses built before these dates have been voluntarily equipped with ABS.

Your school bus will have a yellow ABS malfunction lamp on the instrument panel if it is equipped with ABS.

### **10.6.2 - How ABS Helps You**

When you brake hard on slippery surfaces in a vehicle without ABS, your wheels may lock up. When your steering wheels lock up, you lose steering control. When your other wheels lock up, you may skid or even spin the vehicle.

ABS helps you avoid wheel lock up and maintain control. You may or may not be able to stop faster with ABS, but you should be able to steer around an obstacle while braking, and avoid skids caused by over braking.

### **10.6.3 - Braking With ABS**

When you drive a vehicle with ABS, you should brake as you always have. In other words:

- Use only the braking force necessary to stop safely and stay in control.
- Brake the same way, regardless of whether you have ABS on the bus. However, in emergency braking, do not pump the brakes on a bus with ABS.
- As you slow down, monitor your bus and back off the brakes (if it is safe to do so) to stay in control.

### **10.6.4 - Braking if ABS is Not Working**

Without ABS, you still have normal brake functions. Drive and brake as you always have.

Vehicles with ABS have yellow malfunction lamps to tell you if something is not working. The yellow ABS malfunction lamp is on the bus's instrument panel.

As a system check on newer vehicles, the malfunction lamp comes on at start-up for a bulb check and then goes out quickly. On older systems, the lamp could stay on until you are driving over five mph.

If the lamp stays on after the bulb check, or goes on once you are under way, you may have lost ABS control at one or more wheels.

Remember, if your ABS malfunctions, you still have regular brakes. Drive normally, but get the system serviced soon.

### **10.6.5 - Safety Reminders**

- ABS does not compensate for bad driving habits, such as driving too fast, following too closely, or driving less carefully.
  - ABS won't prevent power or turning skids—ABS should prevent brake-induced skids but not those caused by spinning the drive wheels or going too fast in a turn.
  - ABS won't necessarily shorten stopping distance.
  - ABS will help maintain vehicle control, but not always shorten stopping distance.
  - ABS won't increase or decrease ultimate stopping power—ABS is an "add-on" to your normal brakes, not a replacement for them.
  - ABS won't change the way you normally brake.
  - Under normal brake conditions, your vehicle will stop as it always stopped. ABS only comes into play when a wheel would normally have locked up because of over braking.
  - ABS won't compensate for bad brakes or poor brake maintenance.
  - Remember: The best vehicle safety feature is still a safe driver.
  - Remember: Drive so you never need to use your ABS.
  - Remember: If you need it, ABS could help to prevent a serious crash.
- 

## **10.7 - SPECIAL SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS**

### **10.7.1 - Strobe Lights**

Some school buses are equipped with roof-mounted, white strobe lights. If your bus is so equipped, the overhead strobe light should be used when you have limited visibility. This means that you cannot easily see around you – in front, behind, or beside the school bus. Your visibility could be

only slightly limited or it could be so bad that you can see nothing at all. In all instances, understand and obey your state or local regulations concerning the use of these lights.

### 10.7.2 - Driving in High Winds

Strong winds affect the handling of the school bus! The side of a school bus acts like a sail on a sailboat. Strong winds can push the school bus sideways.

They can even move the school bus off the road or, in extreme conditions, tip it over.

If you are caught in strong winds:

- Keep a strong grip on the steering wheel. Try to anticipate gusts.
- You should slow down to lessen the effect of the wind, or pull off the roadway and wait.
- Contact your dispatcher to get more information on how to proceed.

### 10.7.3 - Backing

Backing a school bus is strongly discouraged. You should back your bus only when you have no other safe way to move the vehicle. You should never back a school bus when students are outside of the bus.

Backing is dangerous and increases your risk of a collision.

If you have no choice and you must back your bus, follow these procedures:

- Post a lookout, preferably inside the school bus looking out the rear window. The purpose of the lookout is to warn you about obstacles, approaching persons, and other vehicles. The lookout should not give directions on how to back the bus.
- Signal for quiet on the bus.
- Constantly check all mirrors and rear windows.
- Back slowly and smoothly.
- If no lookout is available:
  - Set the parking brake.
  - Turn off the motor and take the keys with you.
  - Walk to the rear of the bus to determine whether the way is clear.
- If you must back-up at a student pick-up point, be sure to pick up students before backing and watch for late comers at all times.
- Be sure that all students are in the bus before backing.
- If you must back-up at a student drop-off point, be sure to unload students after backing.

### 10.7.4 – Tail Swing

A school bus can have up to a three-foot tail swing. You need to check your mirrors before and during any turning movements to monitor the tail swing.

#### Test Your Knowledge

1. Define the danger zone. How far does the danger zone extend around the bus?
2. What should you be able to see if the outside flat mirrors are adjusted properly? The outside convex mirrors? The cross view mirrors?
3. You are loading students along the route. When should you activate your alternating flashing amber warning lamps?
4. You are unloading students along your route. Where should students walk to after exiting the bus?
5. After unloading at school, why should you walk through the bus?
6. What position should students be in front of the bus before they cross the roadway?
7. Under what conditions must you evacuate the bus?
8. How far from the nearest rail should you stop at a highway-rail crossing?
9. What is a passive highway-rail crossing? Why should you be extra cautious at this type of crossing?
10. How should you use your brakes if your vehicle is equipped with antilock brakes (ABS)?

If you can't answer these questions, re-read Section 10.

---

## **PART THREE**

---

- 11. Pre-Trip Vehicle Inspection Test
- 12. Basic Vehicle Control Skills Test
- 13. On Road Driving Test

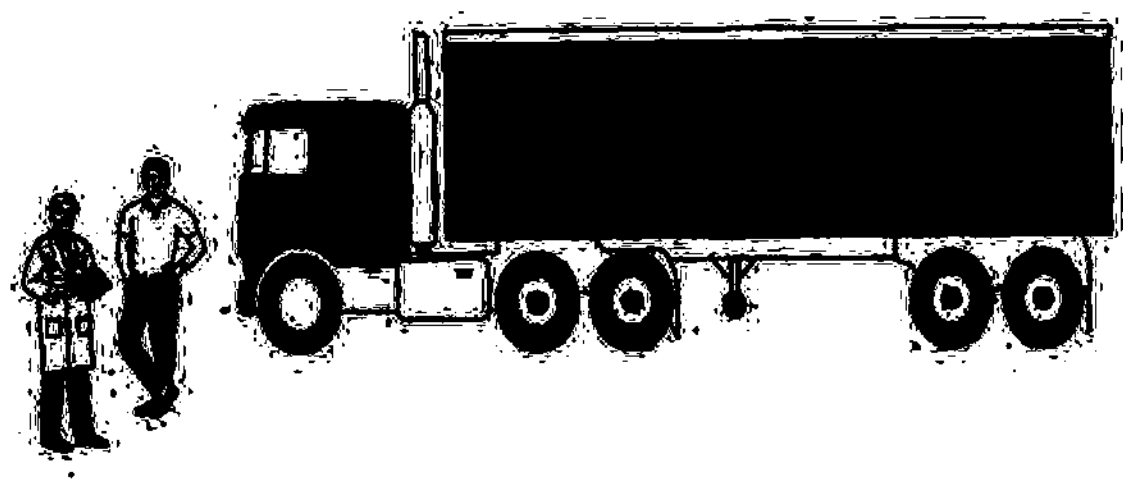
THIS PART IS FOR DRIVERS  
WHO NEED TO TAKE A SKILLS TEST

---

# Section 11

---

## Pre-Trip Vehicle Inspection Test



THIS SECTION WILL ASSIST DRIVERS IN  
TAKING THE PRE-TRIP VEHICLE INSPECTION TEST



# Section 11: Pre-Trip Vehicle Inspection Test

## This Section Covers

- **Internal and External Inspections**

All applicants for a Class A or B CDL will be required to successfully complete a written pre-trip vehicle inspection exam prior to taking the skills test. This written pre-trip exam replaces the previous pre-trip walk-around. The purpose of the pre-trip vehicle inspection test is to determine if the driver knows whether the vehicle is safe to drive.

Be sure to study the procedures on how to perform a check of the air brake system. This information can be found on page 11-2. The air brake portion of pre-trip inspection test is a separate test from the other portions of the pre-trip inspection test. You must qualify on both tests before you are eligible to take the basic control skills road test.

---

### 11.1 ALL VEHICLES

Study the following vehicle parts for the type of vehicle you will be using during the CDL skills tests. You should be able to identify each part and understand what you are looking for or inspecting.

- **Engine Compartment (Engine Off)**

#### Leaks/Hoses

- Look for puddles on the ground.
- Look for dripping fluids on underside of engine and transmission.
- Inspect hoses for condition and leaks.

#### Oil Level

- Indicate where dipstick is located.
- See that oil level is within safe operating range. Level must be above refill mark.

#### Coolant Level

- Inspect reservoir sight glass, or
- If engine is not hot, remove radiator cap and check for visible coolant level.

#### Power Steering Fluid

- Indicate where power steering fluid dipstick is located.
- Check for adequate power steering fluid level. Level must be above refill mark.

#### Engine Compartment Belts

- Check the following belts for snugness (up to 3/4 inch play at center of belt), cracks, or frays:
  - Power steering belt.
  - Water pump belt.
  - Alternator belt.
  - Air compressor belt.
- Make sure component(s) are operating properly, are not damaged or leaking, and are mounted securely.

- **Cab Check/Engine Start**

#### Clutch/Gearshift

- Depress clutch.
- Place gearshift lever in neutral or (park, for automatic transmissions).
- Start engine, then release clutch slowly.

#### Oil Pressure Gauge

- Make sure oil pressure gauge is working.
- Check that pressure gauge shows increasing or normal oil pressure or that the warning light goes off.
- If equipped, oil temperature gauge should begin a gradual rise to the normal operating range.

#### Temperature Gauge

- Make sure the temperature gauge is working.
- Temperature should begin to climb to the normal operating range or temperature light should be off.

#### Ampmeter/Voltmeter

- Check that gauges show alternator and/or generator is charging or that warning light is off.

## Mirrors and Windshield

- Mirrors should be clean and adjusted properly from the **inside**.
- Windshield should be clean with no illegal stickers, no obstructions, or damage to the glass.

## Emergency Equipment

- Check for spare electrical fuses.
- Check for three red reflective triangles.
- Check for a properly charged and rated fire extinguisher.

## Steering Play

- **Non-power steering:** Check for excessive play by turning steering wheel back and forth. Play should not exceed 10 degrees or about two inches on a 20-inch wheel.
- **Power steering:** With the engine running, check for excessive play by turning the steering wheel back and forth. Play should not exceed 10 degrees or about two inches on a 20-inch wheel before front left wheel barely moves.

## Wipers/Washers

- Check that wiper arms and blades are secure, not damaged, and operate smoothly.
- If equipped, windshield washers must operate correctly.

## Lighting Indicators

- Test that dash indicators work when corresponding lights are turned on:
  - Left turn signal.
  - Right turn signal.
  - Four-way emergency flashers.
  - High beam headlight.

## Horn

- Check that air horn and/or electric horn work.

## Heater/Defroster

- Test that the heater and defroster work.

## Parking Brake Check

- Apply parking brake **only** and make sure that it will hold the vehicle by shifting into a lower gear and gently pulling against the brake.

## Hydraulic Brake Check

- Pump the brake pedal three times, then hold it down for five seconds. The brake pedal should not move (depress) during the five seconds.
- If equipped with a hydraulic brake reserve (back-up) system, with the key off, depress the brake pedal and listen for the sound of the reserve system electric motor.
- Check that the warning buzzer or light is off.

## Air Brake Check (air brake equipped vehicles only)

- Failure to perform an air brake check will result in an automatic failure of the vehicle inspection test. Air brake safety devices vary. However, this procedure is designed to see that any safety device operates correctly as air pressure drops from normal to a low air condition. For safety purposes, in areas where an incline is present, you will use wheel chocks during the air brake check. The proper procedures for inspecting the air brake system are as follows:

-With the engine running, build the air pressure to governed cut-out (100-125 psi). Shut off the engine, chock your wheels, if necessary, release the tractor protection valve and parking brake (push in), fully apply the foot brake and hold it for one minute. Check the air gauge to see if the air pressure drops more than three pounds in one minute (single vehicle) or four pounds in one minute (combination vehicle).

-Begin fanning off the air pressure by rapidly applying and releasing the foot brake. Low air warning devices (buzzer, light, flag) should activate before air pressure drops below 60 psi.

-Continue to fan off the air pressure. At approximately 40 psi on a tractor-trailer combination vehicle, the tractor protection valve and parking brake valve should close (pop out). On other combination vehicle types and single vehicle types, the parking brake valve should close (pop out).

## Safety Belt

- Check that the safety belt is securely mounted, adjusts, and latches properly.

## Lights/Reflectors

- Check that all external lights and reflective equipment are clean and functional. Light and reflector checks include:
  - Clearance lights (red on rear, amber elsewhere).
  - Headlights (high and low beams).
  - Taillights.
  - Turn signals.
  - Four-way flashers.
  - Brake lights.
  - Red reflectors (on rear) and amber reflectors (elsewhere).

**Note: Checks of brake, turn signal and four-way flasher functions must be done separately.**

---

## 11.2 EXTERNAL INSPECTION (SCHOOL BUS/BUS/TRUCK/TRACTOR)

### ● Steering

#### Steering Box/Hoses

- Check that the steering box is securely mounted and not leaking. Look for any missing nuts, bolts, and cotter keys
- Check for power steering fluid leaks or damage to power steering hoses.

#### Steering Linkage

- See that connecting links, arms, and rods from the steering box to the wheel are not worn or cracked.
- Check that joints and sockets are not worn or loose and that there are no missing nuts, bolts, or cotter keys.

### ● Suspension

#### Springs/Air/Torque

- Look for missing, shifted, cracked, or broken leaf springs.
- Look for broken or distorted coil springs.
- If vehicle is equipped with torsion bars, torque arms, or other types of suspension components, check that

they are not damaged and are mounted securely.

- Air ride suspension should be checked for damage and leaks.

## Mounts

- Look for cracked or broken spring hangers, missing or damaged bushings, and broken, loose, or missing bolts, u-bolts or other axle mounting parts. (The mounts should be checked at each point where they are secured to the vehicle frame and axle[s]).

## Shock Absorbers

- See that shock absorbers are secure and that there are no leaks.

**Note: Check the same suspension components on every axle, power unit and trailer, if equipped.**

### ● Brakes

#### Slack Adjustors

- Look for broken, loose, or missing parts.
- The angle between the push rod and adjustor arm should be a little over 90 degrees when the brakes are released, and not less than 90 degrees when the brakes are applied.
- When pulled by hand, the brake rod should not move more than one inch with the brakes released.

## Brake Chambers

- See that brake chambers are not leaking, cracked, or dented and are mounted securely.

## Brake Hoses/Lines

- Look for cracked, worn, or leaking hoses, lines, and couplings.

## Drum Brake

- Check for cracks, dents, or holes. Also check for loose or missing bolts.
- Brake linings (where visible) should not be worn dangerously thin.

## Brake Linings

- On some brake drums, there are openings where the brake linings can be seen from outside the drum. For

this type of drum, check that a visible amount of brake lining is showing.

**Note: Check the same brake components on every axle, power unit and trailer, if equipped.**

- **Wheels**

#### **Rims**

- Check for damaged or bent rims. Rims cannot have welding repairs.

#### **Tires**

- The following items must be inspected on every tire:
  - Tread depth:** Check for minimum tread depth (4/32 on steering axle tires, 2/32 on all other tires).
  - Tire condition:** Check that tread is evenly worn and look for cuts or other damage to tread or sidewalls. Also, make sure that valve caps and stems are not missing, broken, or damaged.
  - Tire inflation:** Check for proper inflation by using a tire gauge, or inflation by striking tires with a mallet or other similar device.

#### **Hub Oil Seals/Axle Seals**

- See that hub oil/grease seals and axle seals are not leaking and, if wheel has a sight glass, oil level is adequate.

#### **Lug Nuts**

- Check that all lug nuts are present, free of cracks and distortions, and show no signs of looseness such as rust trails or shiny threads.
- Make sure all bolt holes are not cracked or distorted.

#### **Spacers**

- If equipped, check that spacers are not bent, damaged, or rusted through.
- Spacers should be evenly centered, with the dual wheels and tires evenly separated.

**Note: Check the same wheel inspection on every axle (power unit and trailer, if equipped).**

- **Side of Vehicle**

#### **Doors/Mirrors**

- Check that doors are not damaged and that they open and close properly from the **outside**.
- Hinges should be secure with seals intact.
- Check that mirrors and mirror brackets are not damaged and are mounted securely with no loose fittings.

#### **Fuel Tank**

- Check that tanks are secure, caps are tight, and that there are no leaks from tanks or lines.

#### **Battery/Box**

- Wherever located, see that batteries are secure, connections are tight, and cell caps are present.
- Battery connections should not show signs of excessive corrosion.
- Battery box and cover or door must be secure.

#### **Drive Shaft**

- See that drive shaft is not bent or cracked.
- Couplings should be secure and free of foreign objects.

#### **Exhaust System**

- Check system for damage and signs of leaks such as rust or carbon soot.
- System should be connected tightly and mounted securely.

#### **Frame**

- Look for cracks, broken welds, holes or other damage to the longitudinal frame members, cross members, box, and floor.

- **Rear of Vehicle**

#### **Splash Guards**

- If equipped, check that splash guards or mud flaps are not damaged and are mounted securely.

#### **Doors/Ties/Lifts**

- Check that doors and hinges are not damaged and

that they open, close, and latch properly from the **outside**, if equipped.

- Ties, straps, chains, and binders must also be secure.
- If equipped with a cargo lift, look for leaking, damaged or missing parts and explain how it should be checked for correct operation.
- Lift must be fully retracted and latched securely.

#### • **Tractor/Coupling**

##### **Air/Electric Lines**

- Listen for air leaks. Check that air hoses and electrical lines are not cut, chafed, spliced, or worn (steel braid should not show through).
- Make sure air and electrical lines are not tangled, pinched, or dragging against tractor parts.

##### **Catwalk/Tongue Storage Area**

- Check that the catwalk is solid, clear of objects, and securely bolted to tractor frame.
- Check that the storage area is solid and secured to the tongue, and that cargo in the storage area (i.e., chains, binders, etc.), is secured.

##### **Mounting Bolts**

- Look for loose or missing mounting brackets, clamps, bolts, or nuts. Both the fifth wheel and the slide mounting must be solidly attached.
- Check for loose or missing mounting bolts and for broken welds for pintle hook or other type of hitch mount, and tongue/drawbar assembly, to ensure that they are solidly attached in place.
- On other types of coupling systems (i.e., ball hitch, pintle hook, etc.), inspect all coupling components and mounting brackets for missing or broken parts.

##### **Safety Latch/Locking Jaws/Safety Devices**

- Look into fifth wheel gap and check that locking jaws are fully closed around the kingpin.
- Check to make sure the latch is secured and locked in place, cotter pin is not missing, is in place and not damaged.
- Safety chains are hooked and crisscrossed, free of kinks and excessive slack, cotter-pins-to-hooks are in

place, and hooks are secured with hooks pointing in an outward position.

- If trailer is equipped with electric brakes, check that breakaway chains or cables with battery backup are not missing or damaged.
- On other types of coupling systems (i.e., ball hitch, pintle hook, etc.), inspect the locking mechanism for missing or broken parts and make sure it is locked securely. If present, safety cables or chains must be secure and free of kinks and excessive slack.

##### **Platform (Fifth Wheel) (Pintle Hook)**

- Check for cracks or breaks in the platform structure which supports the fifth wheel skid plate.
- Check the pintle hook for cracks or breaks and excessive wear.

##### **Release Arm (Fifth Wheel)**

- If equipped, make sure the release arm is in the engaged position and the safety latch is in place.
- Check to see that the hitch release lever is in place and secure.

##### **Kingpin/Apron/Gap/Tongue/Drawbar**

- Check that the kingpin is not bent.
- Make sure the visible part of the apron is not bent, cracked, or broken.
- Check that the trailer is laying flat on the fifth wheel skid plate (no gap).
- Check that the tongue/drawbar is not bent or twisted and check for broken welds and stress cracks.
- Check that the tongue/drawbar eye is not worn excessively.

##### **Locking Pins (Fifth Wheel)/Sliding Pintle**

- If equipped, look for loose or missing pins in the slide mechanism of the sliding fifth wheel. If air powered, check for leaks.
- Make sure locking pins are fully engaged.
- Check that the fifth wheel is positioned properly so that the tractor frame will clear the landing gear during turns.
- If equipped, check that the sliding pintle is secured,

there are no loose or missing nuts or bolts, and cotter pin is in place.

---

### 11.3 SCHOOL BUS ONLY

#### Emergency Equipment

- In addition to checking for spare electrical fuses (if equipped), three red reflective triangles, and a properly charged and rated fire extinguisher, school bus drivers must also inspect the following emergency equipment:
  - Three red-burning flares (fusees).
  - A nine-item first-aid kit.

#### Lighting Indicators

- In addition to checking the lighting indicators listed in Section 11.2 of this manual, school bus drivers must also check the following lighting indicators (internal panel lights):
  - Alternately flashing amber lights indicator, if equipped.
  - Alternately flashing red lights indicator.
  - Strobe light indicator, if equipped.

#### Lights/Reflectors

- In addition to checking the lights and reflective devices listed in Section 11.2 of this manual, school bus drivers must also check the following external lights and reflectors:
  - Strobe light, if equipped.
  - Stop arm light, if equipped.
  - Alternately flashing amber lights, if equipped.
  - Alternately flashing red lights.

#### Stop Arm

- If equipped, check the stop arm to see that it is mounted securely to the frame of the vehicle. Also, check for loose fittings and damage.

#### Passenger Entry/Lift

- Check that the entry door is not damaged, operates smoothly, and closes securely from the **inside**.
- Hand rails are secure and the step light is working, if equipped.
- The entry steps must be clear with the treads not loose or worn excessively.
- If equipped with a handicap lift, look for leaking, damaged, or missing parts and explain how lift should be

checked for correct operation. Lift must be fully retracted and latched securely.

#### Emergency Exit

- Make sure that all emergency exits are not damaged, operate smoothly, and close securely from the **inside**.
- Check that any emergency exit warning devices are working.

#### Seating

- Look for broken seat frames and check that seat frames are firmly attached to the floor.
- Check that seat cushions are attached securely to the seat frames.

---

### 11.4 TRAILER

#### ● Trailer Front

#### Air/Electrical Connections

- Check that trailer air connectors are sealed and in good condition.
- Make sure glad hands are locked in place, free of damage or air leaks.
- Make sure the trailer electrical plug is firmly seated and locked in place.

#### Header Board

- If equipped, check the header board to see that it is secure, free of damage, and strong enough to contain cargo.
- If equipped, the canvas or tarp carrier must be mounted and fastened securely.
- On enclosed trailers, check the front area for signs of damage such as cracks, bulges, or holes.

#### ● Side of Trailer

#### Landing Gear

- Check that the landing gear is fully raised, has no missing parts, crank handle is secure, and the support frame is not damaged.
- If power operated, check for air or hydraulic leaks.

## Doors/Ties/Lifts

- If equipped, check that doors are not damaged. Check that doors open, close, and latch properly from the **outside**.
- Check that ties, straps, chains, and binders are secure
- If equipped with a cargo lift, look for leaking, damaged or missing parts and explain how it should be checked for correct operation.
- Lift should be fully retracted and latched securely.

## Frame

- Look for cracks, broken welds, holes or other damage to the frame, cross members, box, and floor.

## Tandem Release Arm/Locking Pins

- If equipped, make sure the locking pins are locked in place and release arm is secured.

## ● Remainder of Trailer

## Remainder of Trailer

- Please refer to Section 10.2 of this manual for detailed inspection procedures regarding the following components:
  - Wheels.
  - Suspension system.
  - Brakes.
  - Doors/ties/lift.
  - Splash guards.

---

## 11.5 COACH/TRANSIT BUS

## ● Passenger Items

## Passenger Entry/Lift

- Check that entry doors operate smoothly and close securely from the **inside**.
- Check that handrails are secure and, if equipped, that the step light(s) are working.
- Check that the entry steps are clear, with the treads not loose or worn excessively.
- If equipped with a handicap lift, look for any leaking, damaged or missing part, and explain how it should be checked for correct operation.

- Lift should be fully retracted and latched securely.

## Emergency Exits

- Make sure that all emergency exits are not damaged, operate smoothly, and close securely from the **inside**.
- Check that any emergency exit warning devices are working.

## Passenger Seating

- Look for broken seat frames and check that seat frames are firmly attached to the floor.
- Check that seat cushions are attached securely to the seat frames.

## ● Entry/Exit

## Doors/Mirrors

- Check that entry/exit doors are not damaged and operate smoothly from the **outside**. Hinges should be secure with seals intact.
- Make sure that the passenger exit mirrors and all external mirrors and mirror brackets are not damaged and are mounted securely with no loose fittings.

## ● External Inspection of Coach/Transit Bus

## Level/Air Leaks

- See that the vehicle is sitting level front and rear, and if air-equipped, check for audible air leaks from the suspension system.

## Fuel Tank(s)

- See that fuel tank(s) are secure with no leaks from tank(s) or lines.

## Compartments

- Check that baggage and all other exterior compartment doors are not damaged, operate properly, and latch securely.

## Battery/Box

- Wherever located, see that battery(s) are secure, connections are tight, and cell caps are present.
- Battery connections should not show signs of excessive corrosion.



- Check that battery box and cover or door is not damaged and is secure.

- **Remainder of Coach/Transit Bus**

#### **Remainder of Vehicle**

- Please refer to Section 11.2 of this manual for detailed inspection procedures regarding the following components:
  - Wheels.

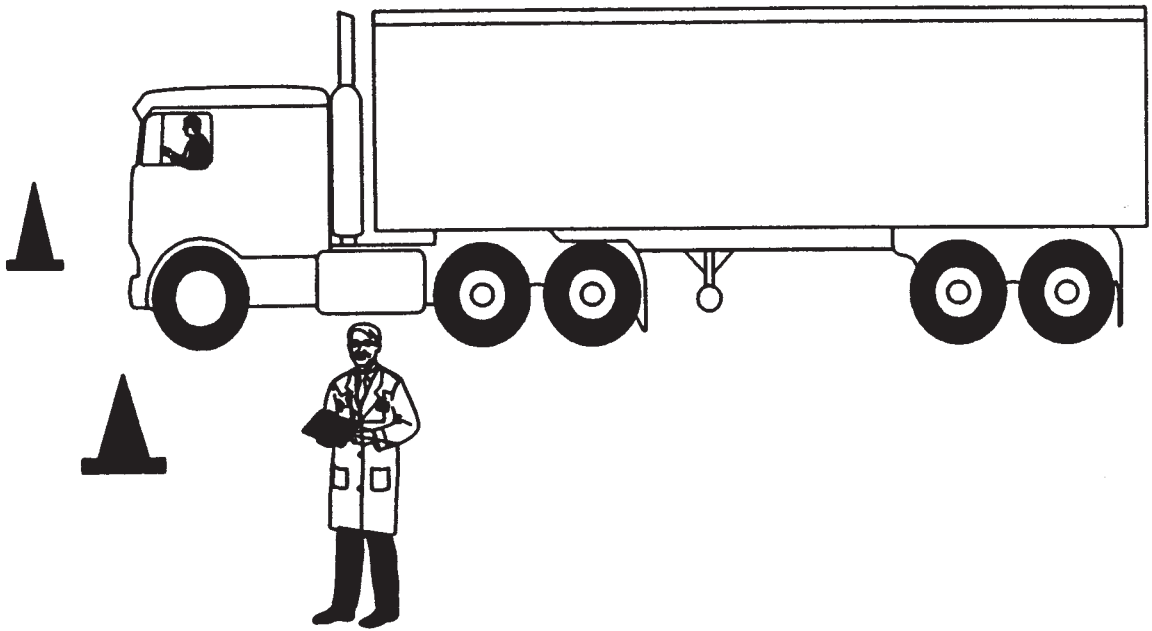
**Remember, the written pre-trip vehicle inspection and the air brake test must be passed before you can proceed to the basic vehicle control skills test.**

---

## Section 12

---

### Basic Vehicle Control Skills Test



THIS SECTION WILL ASSIST DRIVERS IN  
TAKING THE BASIC VEHICLE CONTROL SKILLS TEST

# Section 12: Basic Vehicle Control Skills Test

## This Section Covers

- **Skills Test Exercises**
- **Skills Test Scoring**
- **Straight Line Backing**
- **Parallel Park (Conventional)**

Your basic control skills could be tested using one or more of the following exercises off-road or somewhere on the street during the road test.

These exercises are shown in Figures 12-1 and 13-2.

---

## 12.1 SCORING

- **Crossing Boundaries**

The examiner will score the number of times you touch or cross over an exercise boundary line with any portion of your vehicle. Each encroachment will count as an error.

- **Pull-ups**

In some of the exercises, the examiner will also score the number of times you stop and change direction or pull-up during the exercise. Errors will be explained to you prior to the beginning of each exercise.

---

## 12.2 EXERCISES

- **Straight Line Backing**

You will be asked to back your vehicle in a straight line without touching or crossing over the exercise boundaries. (See Figure 12-1).

- **Parallel Park Conventional**

You may be asked to park in a parallel parking space that is on your right. You are to drive past the parking space and back into it bringing the rear of your vehicle as close as possible to the rear of the space without crossing side or rear boundaries marked by cones. You are to try to get your vehicle or trailer, if combination vehicle, completely into the space. (See Figure 12-2).

*Figure 11-1-Straight Line Backing*

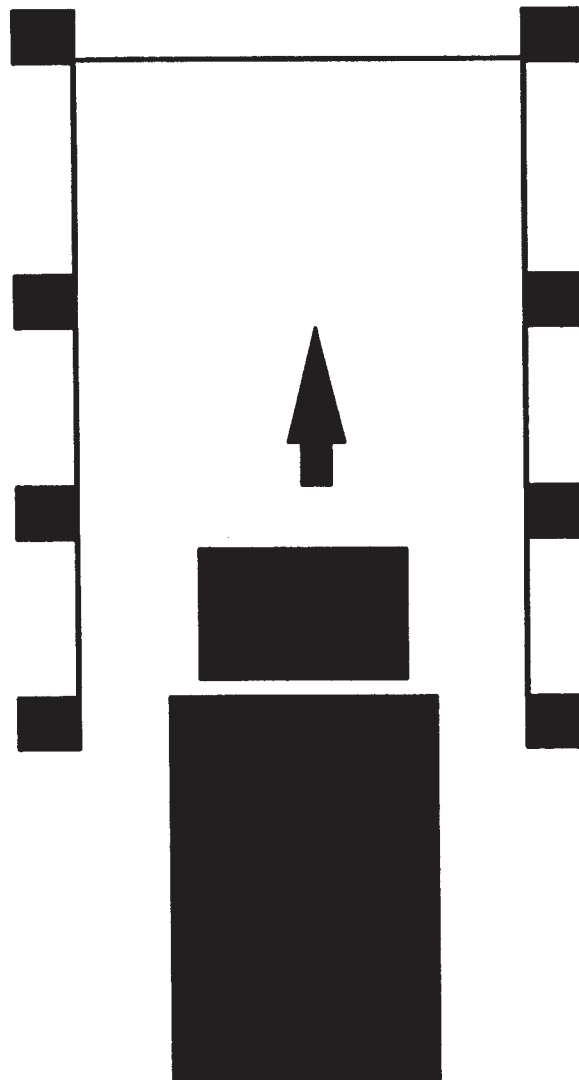
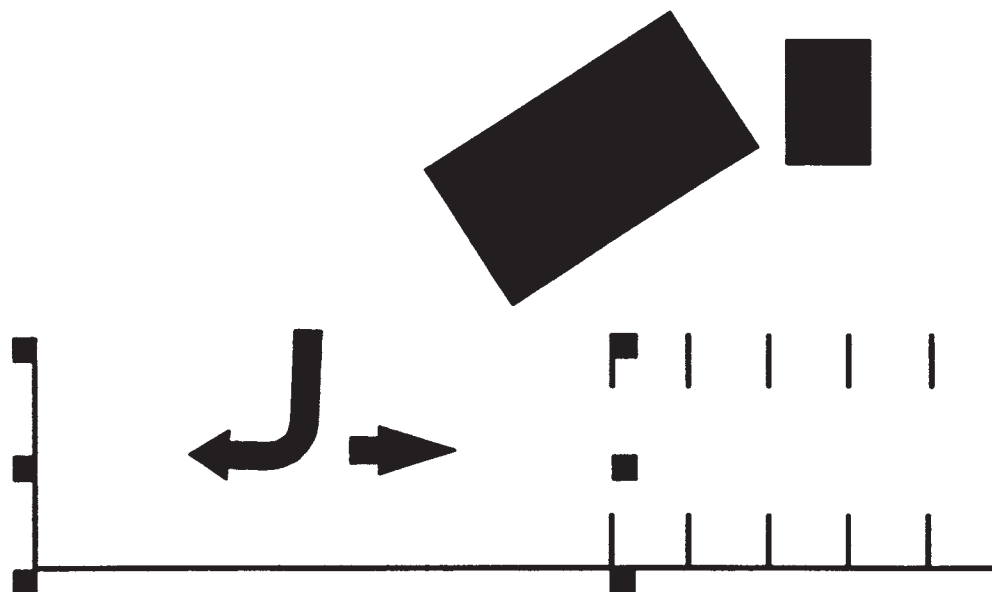


Figure 11-2 - Parallel Park (Conventional)

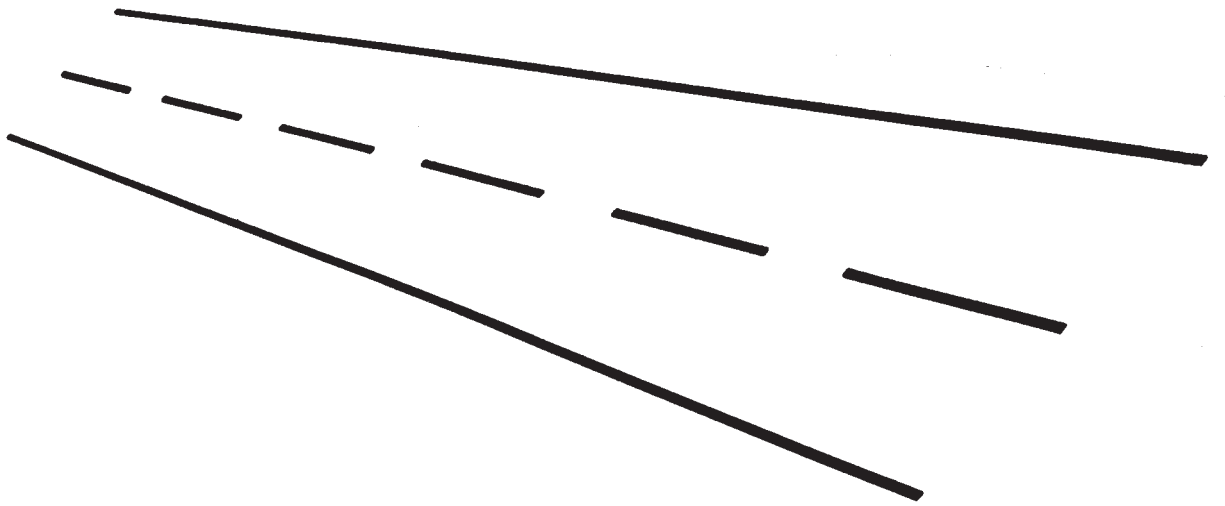


---

## Section 13

---

### On-Road Driving Test



THIS SECTION WILL ASSIST DRIVERS  
IN TAKING THE ON-ROAD DRIVING TEST

# Section 13: On-Road Driving Test

## This Section Covers

### ● How You Will Be Tested

You will drive over a test route that has a variety of traffic situations. At all times during the test, you must drive in a safe and responsible manner.

During the driving test, the examiner will be scoring you on specific driving maneuvers as well as on your general driving behavior. You will follow the directions of the examiner. Directions will be given to you so you will have plenty of time to do what the examiner has asked. You will not be asked to drive in an unsafe manner.

If your test route does not have certain traffic situations, you may be asked to simulate a traffic situation. You will do this by telling the examiner what you are or would be doing if you were in that traffic situation.

---

## 13.1 HOW YOU WILL BE TESTED

### ● Turns

You have been asked to make a turn:

- Check traffic in all directions.
- Use turn signals and safely get into the lane needed for the turn.

As you approach the turn:

- Use turn signals to warn others of your turn.
- Slow down smoothly, change gears as needed to keep power, but do not coast unsafely. Unsafe coasting occurs when your vehicle is out of gear clutch depressed or gearshift in neutral for more than the length of your vehicle.

If you must stop before making the turn:

- Come to a smooth stop without skidding.
- Come to a complete stop behind the stop line, crosswalk, or stop sign.
- If stopping behind another vehicle, stop where you can see the rear tires on the vehicle ahead of you safe gap.
- Do not let your vehicle roll.

- Keep the front wheels aimed straight ahead.

When ready to turn:

- Check traffic in all directions.
- Keep both hands on the steering wheel during the turn.
- Do not change gears during the turn.
- Keep checking your mirror to make sure the vehicle does not hit anything on the inside of the turn.
- Vehicle should not move into oncoming traffic.
- Vehicle should finish turn in correct lane.

After turn:

- Make sure turn signal is off.
- Get up to speed of traffic, use turn signal, and move into right-most lane when safe to do so, if not already there.

### ● Intersections

As you approach an intersection:

- Check traffic thoroughly in all directions.
- Decelerate gently.
- Brake smoothly and, if necessary, change gears.
- If necessary, come to a complete stop (no coasting) behind any stop signs, signals, sidewalks, or stop lines maintaining a safe gap behind any vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle must not roll forward or backward.

When driving through an intersection:

- Check traffic thoroughly in all directions.
- Decelerate and yield to any pedestrians and traffic in the intersection.
- Do not change lanes or shift gears while proceeding through the intersection.



- Keep your hands on the wheel.

Once through the intersection:

- Continue checking traffic.
- Accelerate smoothly and change gears as necessary.

### ● **Urban/Rural Straight**

During this part of the test, you are expected to make regular traffic checks and maintain a safe following distance. Your vehicle should be centered in the proper lane (right-most lane) and you should keep up with the flow of traffic but not exceed the posted speed limit.

### ● **Urban/Rural Lane Changes**

During the multiple lane portion of the urban and rural sections, you will be asked to change lanes to the left, and then back to the right. You should make the necessary traffic checks first, then use proper signals and smoothly change lanes when it is safe to do so.

### ● **Expressway**

Before entering the expressway:

- Check traffic.
- Use proper signals.
- Merge smoothly into the proper lane of traffic.

Once on the expressway:

- Maintain proper lane positioning, vehicle spacing, and vehicle speed.
- Continue to check traffic thoroughly in all directions.

You will be instructed to change lanes:

- You must make necessary traffic checks.
- Use proper signals.
- Change lanes smoothly when it is safe to do so.

When exiting the expressway:

- Make necessary traffic checks.
- Use proper signals.
- Decelerate smoothly in the exit lane.

- Once on the exit ramp, you must continue to decelerate within the lane markings and maintain adequate spacing between your vehicle and other vehicles.

### ● **Stop/Start**

For this maneuver, you will be asked to pull your vehicle over to the side of the road and stop as if you were going to get out and check something on your vehicle. You must check traffic thoroughly in all directions and move to the right-most lane or shoulder of road.

As you prepare for the stop:

- Check traffic.
- Activate your right turn signal.
- Decelerate smoothly, brake evenly, change gears as necessary.
- Bring your vehicle to a full stop without coasting.

Once stopped:

- Vehicle must be parallel to the curb or shoulder of the road and safely out of the traffic flow.
- Vehicle should not be blocking driveways, fire hydrants, intersections, signs, etc.
- Cancel your turn signal.
- Activate your four-way emergency flashers.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Move the gear shift to neutral or park.
- Remove your feet from the brake and clutch pedals.

When instructed to resume:

- Check traffic and your mirrors thoroughly in all directions.
- Turn off your four-way flashers.
- Activate the left turn signal.
- When traffic permits, you should release the parking brake and pull straight ahead.
- Do not turn the wheel before your vehicle moves.
- Check traffic from all directions, especially to the left.

- Steer and accelerate smoothly into the proper lane when safe to do so.
- Once your vehicle is back into the flow of traffic, cancel your left turn signal.

### ● Curve

When approaching a curve:

- Check traffic thoroughly in all directions.
- **Before** entering the curve, reduce speed so further braking or shifting is not required in the curve.
- Keep vehicle in the lane.
- Continue checking traffic in all directions.

### ● Upgrade

As you approach the upgrade:

- Select the proper gear to maintain speed and not lug the engine.
- Check traffic thoroughly in all directions and move to the right-most or curb lane.
- If legal to do so, use four-way flashers if traveling too slowly for the flow of traffic.

### ● Downgrade

Before starting down the grade:

- Downshift as needed to help control engine speed and test brakes by gently applying the foot brake to ensure they are functioning properly. As your vehicle moves down the grade, continue checking traffic in all directions, stay in the right-most or curb lane, and, if legal to do so, use four-way flashers if your vehicle is moving too slowly for traffic. Increase following distance and observe the following downhill braking procedures:

-Select a "safe" speed, one that is not too fast for the weight of the vehicle, length and steepness of the grade, weather, and road conditions.

-Once a "safe" speed has been reached, apply the brake hard enough to feel a definite slowdown.

-When speed has been reduced to five mph below the "safe" speed, release the brakes. [This application should last for about three seconds.]

-Once speed has increased to the "safe" speed, repeat

the procedure.

**For example**, if your "safe" speed is 40 mph, you should apply the brakes once your vehicle speed reaches 40 mph. Your brakes should be applied hard enough to reduce your speed to 35 mph. Once your vehicle speed reaches 35 mph, release your brakes. Repeat this procedure as often as necessary until you have reached the end of the downgrade. This braking technique is called "snubbing."

When operating any commercial vehicle, do not ride the clutch, race the engine, change gears, or coast while driving down the grade. At the bottom of the grade, be sure to cancel your four-way flashers.

Not all test routes will contain an area of sufficient grade to test your skill adequately. **Therefore, you may be asked to simulate (verbally) driving up and down a steep hill.** You must be familiar with the upgrade/downgrade procedures so that you can explain and/or demonstrate them to the examiner at any time during the driving test.

### ● Railroad Crossing

**Before** reaching the crossing, all commercial drivers should:

- Decelerate, brake smoothly, and shift gears as necessary.
- Look and listen for the presence of trains.
- Check traffic in all directions.

**Do not** stop, change gears, pass another vehicle, or change lanes while any part of your vehicle is in the crossing.

If you are driving a bus, a school bus, or a vehicle displaying placards, you should be prepared to observe the following procedures at every railroad crossing, unless the crossing is exempt:

- As the vehicle approaches a railroad crossing, activate the four-way flashers.
- Stop the vehicle within 50 feet, but not less than 15 feet, from the nearest rail.
- Listen and look in both directions along the track for an approaching train and for signals indicating the approach of a train. If operating a bus, you may also be required to open the window and door prior to crossing tracks.
- Keep hands on the steering wheel as the vehicle crosses the tracks.

- Do not stop, change gears, or change lanes while any part of your vehicle is proceeding across the tracks.
- Four-way flashers should be deactivated after the vehicle crosses the tracks.

**Not all driving road test routes will have a railroad crossing. You may be asked to explain and demonstrate the proper railroad crossing procedures to the examiner at a simulated location.**

#### ● **Bridge/Overpass/Sign**

After driving under an overpass, you may be asked to tell the examiner what the posted clearance or height was. After going over a bridge, you may be asked to tell the examiner what the posted weight limit was. If your test route does not have a bridge or overpass, you may be asked about another traffic sign. When asked, be prepared to identify and explain to the examiner any traffic sign which may appear on the route.

During the driving test you must:

- Wear your safety belt.
- Obey all traffic signs, signals, and laws.
- Complete the test without an accident or moving violation.

You will be scored on your overall performance in the following general driving behavior categories:

#### **Clutch Usage** (for manual transmission)

- Always use clutch to shift.
- Double-clutch if vehicle is equipped with non-synchronized transmission.
- Do not rev or lug the engine.
- Do not ride clutch to control speed, coast with the clutch depressed, or “pop” the clutch.

#### **Gear Usage** (for manual transmission)

- Do not grind or clash gears.
- Select gear that does not rev or lug engine.
- Do not shift in turns and intersections.

#### **Brake Usage**

- Do not ride or pump brake.

- Do not brake harshly. Brake smoothly using steady pressure.

#### **Lane Usage**

- Do not put vehicle over curbs, sidewalks, or lane markings.
- Stop behind stop lines, crosswalks, or stop signs.
- Complete a turn in the proper lane on a multiple lane road. Vehicle should finish a left turn in the lane directly to the right of the center line.
- Finish a right turn in the right-most or curb lane.
- Move to or remain in right-most lane unless lane is blocked.

# Section 14: Special Requirements for Texas Commercial Motor Vehicles

## 14.1 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS (PAPERS, PERMITS)

**Papers.** All commercial motor vehicles, truck tractors, trailers, or semitrailers must carry registration papers (receipt for license plates) on the vehicles while operating on a public highway. These papers shall show the weight of the vehicle empty and how much it is registered to haul.

**Special Permits.** If you wish to haul a load or move equipment that is heavier, longer, wider, or higher than the law allows, you must obtain a special permit from the Texas Department of Transportation. A permit will not be granted if the load can reasonably be dismantled.

## 14.2 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS (EQUIPMENT)

**Flares, Fusees, or Reflectors.** No person shall operate a truck, bus, truck tractor, or any motor vehicle towing a house trailer, upon any highway outside the city limits or upon any divided highway at any time from a half hour after sunset to a half hour before sunrise unless there shall be carried in such vehicle the following: at least three flares, or three red electric lanterns, or three portable red emergency reflectors. During times when lighted lamps are not required two red flags must be used in place of flares, lights, or reflectors. Motor vehicles transporting explosives or any cargo tank truck used for the transportation of any flammable liquid or compressed flammable gases, or any motor vehicle using compressed gas as a fuel shall not use flares, fusees, or any signals produced by flame. D.O.T. approved triangular reflectors can be used in lieu of the above equipment.

The first thing the driver of a disabled vehicle must do is put out the proper flares, flags, or reflectors.

**Hazard Warning Signal Lights.** When any truck, bus, truck tractor, trailer, semitrailer, or pole trailer 80 inches or more in width or 30 feet or more in overall length is stopped upon a roadway or adjacent shoulder, the driver shall immediately actuate electric hazard warning signal lights, flashers which flash simultaneously. These lights need not be displayed, however, by a vehicle legally parked inside the city limits or when stopped to receive or discharge passengers.

### Fire Extinguisher

All school buses, buses, taxis, and other vehicles hauling passengers for hire or lease, must carry a chemical type fire extinguisher of at least one quart capacity.

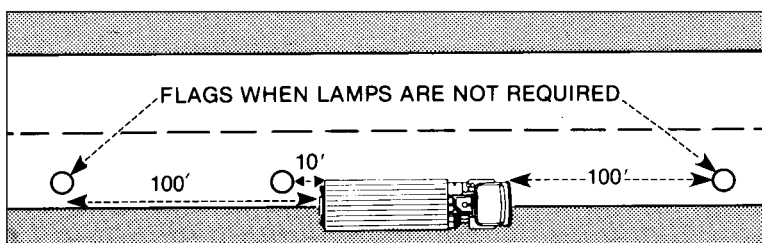
Commercial vehicles that are subject to the Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations must be equipped with a fire extinguisher that is properly filled and located so that it is readily accessible for use. The fire extinguisher must be securely mounted on the vehicle. (**Note:** Extinguishers, when required, must meet the standards of 393.95 of the Code of Federal Regulations.)

**Lighting and Reflectors.** Reflectors must be mounted not less than 24 inches nor more than 60 inches in height above the ground on every pole trailer and on trucks, buses, truck tractors, trailers, semitrailers which are 80 or more inches in width.

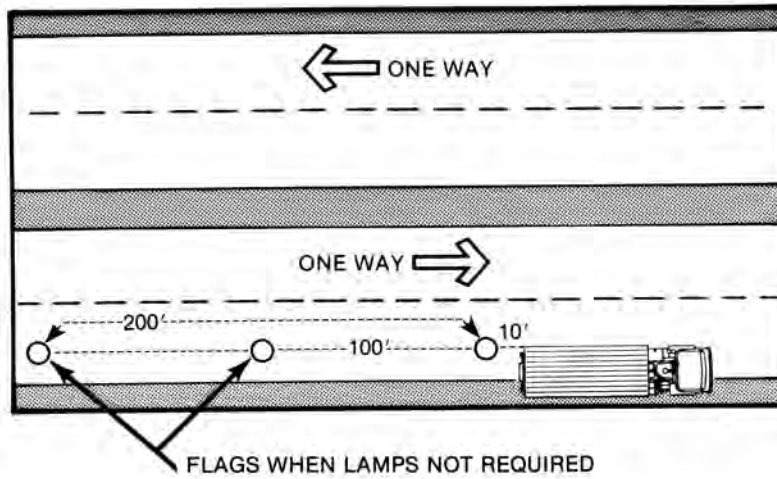
See diagrams for lighting and reflector requirements for your type vehicle.

Under certain conditions, farm, fertilizer, and boat trailers are exempt from lighting requirements. Mobile homes being moved under permit are exempt from lighting and reflector requirements. For further information concerning lighting requirements for these vehicles request the Department's publication on lighting and reflector requirements for trailers. This publication is available at any Department of Public Safety office or by writing to the Austin headquarters.

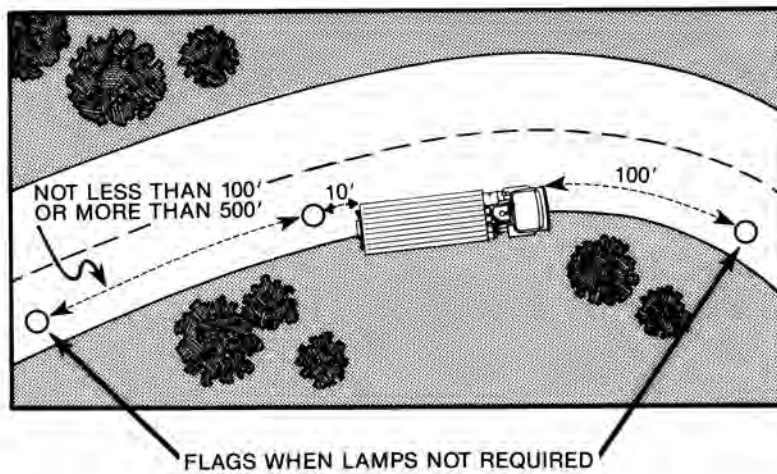
TWO WAY ROADWAY



## DIVIDED HIGHWAY



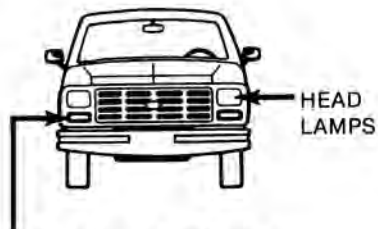
## VISION OBSCURED



# VEHICLE LIGHTING AND REFLECTOR REQUIREMENTS

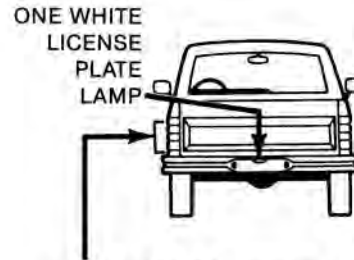
ON EVERY  
TRUCK OR BUS LESS THAN 80" IN WIDTH

## FRONT



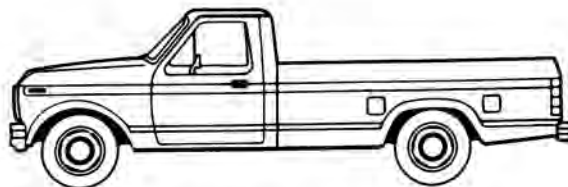
Electric turn signal lamps  
one on each side (Color  
white to amber)

## REAR



\*Two red tail lamps-one each side  
Two red stop lamps-one each side  
Two red reflectors-one each side  
Electric turn signal lamps one on  
each side at rear (Color amber to r  
(Lamps and/or reflectors may be  
incorporated)

## ON EACH SIDE

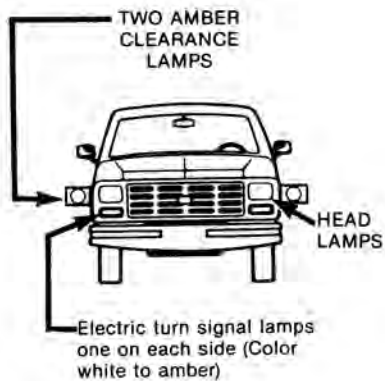


NO REQUIREMENTS

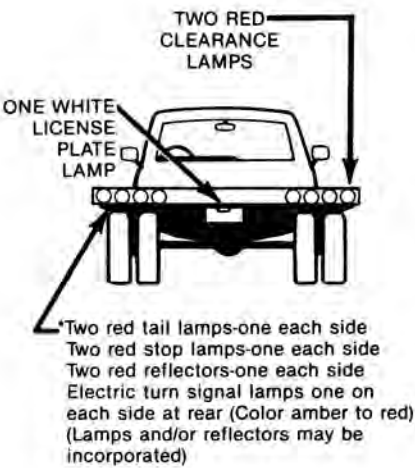


**ON EVERY  
TRUCK OR BUS 80" OR MORE IN WIDTH**

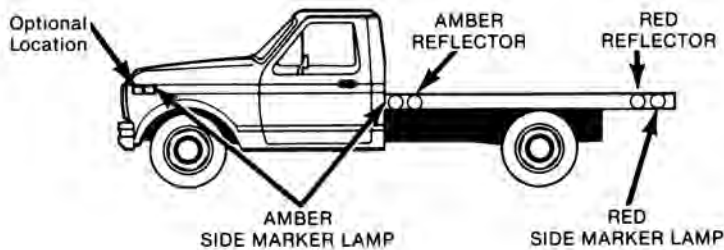
**FRONT**



**REAR**

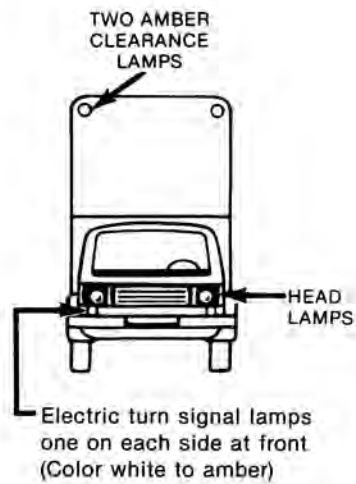


**ON EACH SIDE**

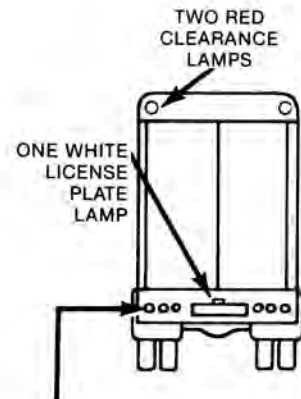




## FRONT

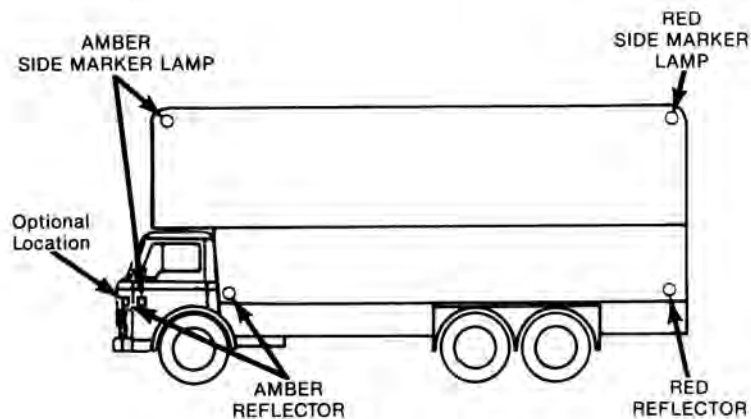


## REAR



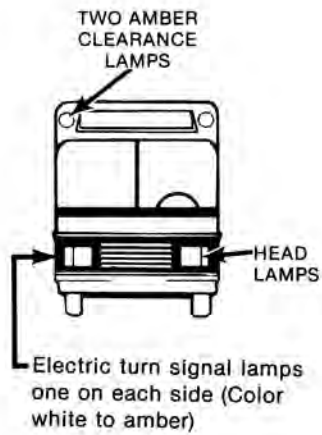
\*Two red tail lamps-one each side  
Two red stop lamps-one each side  
Two red reflectors-one each side  
Electric turn signal lamps one on each side at rear (Color amber to red)  
(Lamps and/or reflectors may be incorporated)

## ON EACH SIDE

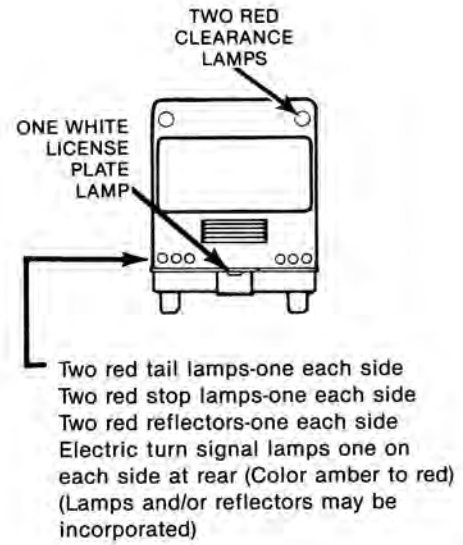


\*Trucks manufactured or assembled prior to model year 1960 required to have at least one taillight.

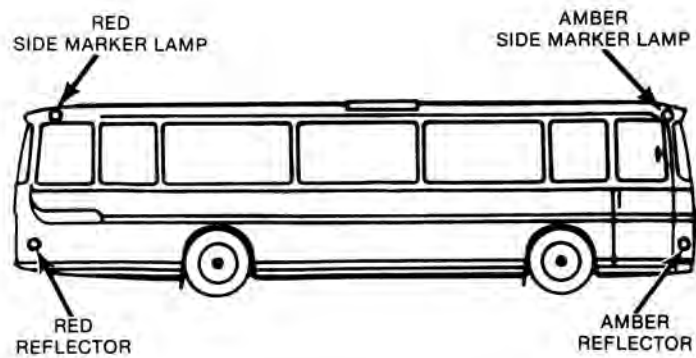
## FRONT



## REAR



## ON EACH SIDE



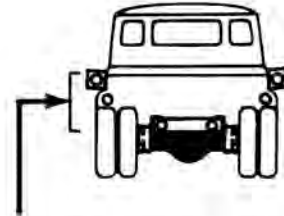
## ON EVERY TRUCK-TRACTOR

### FRONT



\*\*\*Electric turn signal lamps one on each side (Color white to amber)

### REAR



Two red tail lamps-one each side  
Two red stop lamps-one each side  
Two red reflectors-one each side  
\*\*\*Electric turn signal lamps one on each side at rear (Color amber to red) (Lamps and/or reflectors may be incorporated)

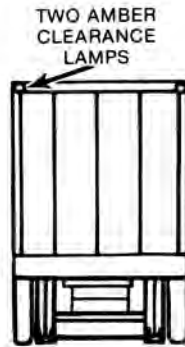
### ON EACH SIDE



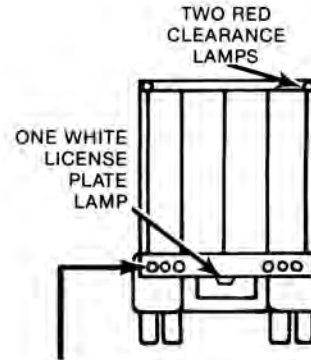
NO REQUIREMENTS

**ON EVERY  
TRAILER 80" OR MORE IN OVERALL WIDTH**

**FRONT**

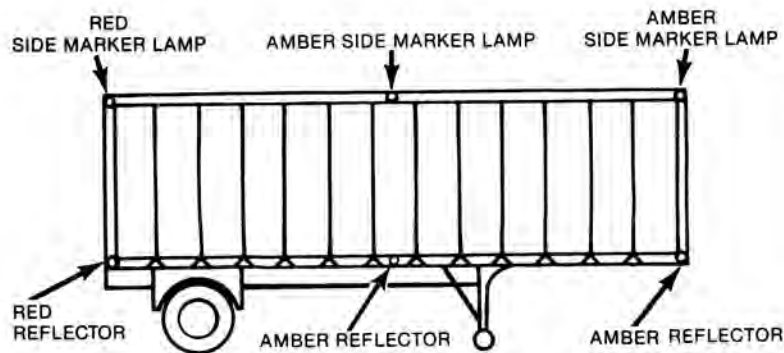


**REAR**



Two red tail lamps-one each side  
Two red stop lamps-one each side  
Two red reflectors-one each side  
Electric turn signal lamps one on  
each side at rear (Color amber to red)  
(Lamps and/or reflectors may be  
incorporated)

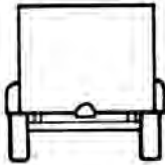
**ON EACH SIDE**



Intermediate side marker lamp and reflector required only on trailers measuring 30 feet or more in length.

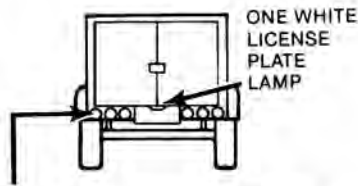
## ON EVERY TRAILER LESS THAN 80" IN WIDTH

### FRONT



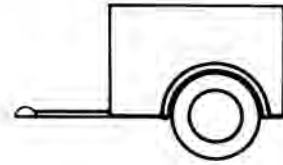
NO REQUIREMENTS

### REAR



Two red tail lamps-one each side  
Two red stop lamps-one each side  
Two red reflectors-one each side  
Electric turn signal lamps one on each side at rear (Color amber to red)  
(Lamps and/or reflectors may be incorporated)

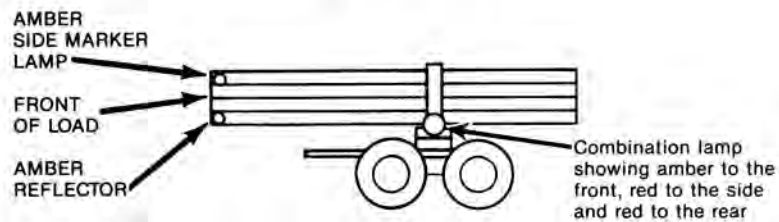
### ON EACH SIDE



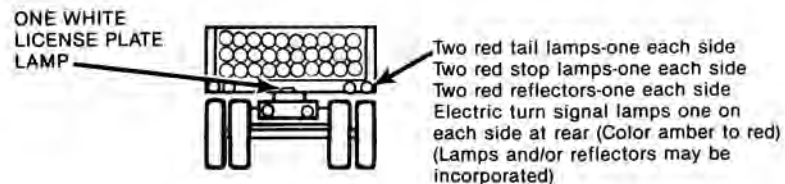
NO REQUIREMENTS

## ON EVERY POLE TRAILER

### ON EACH SIDE



### REAR



**5. Flashing Lights.** Flashing lights are permitted on emergency vehicles, on snow removal equipment, and on school buses when stopping or stopped for children to board or alight. These lights are also allowed to be used by tow trucks under the direction of a law enforcement officer at the scene of an accident or while hooking up a disabled vehicle in the roadway.

**6. Special Regulations for Certain Vehicles.** When operated on the highway at night all animal-drawn vehicles, implements of husbandry, road machinery, road rollers, and farm tractors not otherwise required to have lamps or lighting devices must have a white light on the front visible for 1,000 feet and two red lights on the rear visible for 1,000 feet, or one red light to the rear visible for 1,000 feet and two red reflectors visible for 600 feet.

## **7. Brakes**

a. Trailers, semitrailers, and pole trailers with a gross weight of 4,500 pounds or less are exempt from brake requirements. Trailers, semitrailers, and pole trailers with a gross weight in excess of 4,500 pounds and which do not exceed 15,000 pounds and operated at speeds of 30 miles per hour or less are not required to be equipped with brakes. Trailers, semitrailers, and pole trailers with a gross weight in excess of 4,500 pounds and which do not exceed 15,000 pounds and are operated at speeds in excess of 30 miles per hour must have brakes acting on both wheels of the rear axle.

b. Every motor vehicle, trailer, semitrailer, pole trailer, and combination of such vehicles equipped with brakes shall have the braking system so arranged that one control device can be used to operate all brakes. This does not prevent the use of additional control devices to operate brakes on the towed vehicles. Surge or inertia brake systems may be used on trailers and semitrailers with a gross weight of 15,000 pounds or less.

c. Under all conditions, the combination of vehicles must be capable of complying with the performance requirements. Generally, if the trailer and the combination is 3,000 pounds or less, the combination must be able to stop within 40 feet when traveling 20 miles per hour; if the trailer and the combination is in excess of 3,000 pounds, the combination must be able to stop within 50 feet when traveling 20 miles per hour.

**8. Turn Signal Indicators.** All motor vehicles, trailers, semitrailers, or pole trailers except motorcycles and certain trailers shall be equipped with electrical turn signal lights, except that passenger cars or trucks

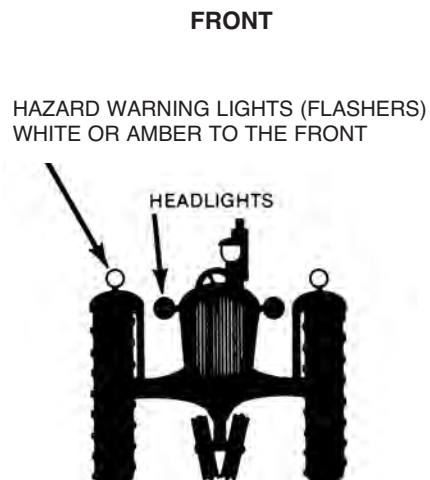
under 80 inches in width and manufactured prior to the year model 1960 need not be equipped with electrical turn signals unless the body or load of the vehicle or combination of vehicles extends to side more than 24 inches from the center of the top of the steering wheel, or the rear limit of the body or load exceeds more than 14 feet from the center of the top of the steering wheel.

**9. Mud Flaps.** All trucks and trailers with four or more tires on the rear axle must be equipped with safety guards or mud flaps behind the rear wheels. These flaps must reach to within 8 inches of the surface of the highway and are for the purpose of preventing the slinging of mud and slush. This provision does not apply to pole trailers or to a truck tractor when it is being operated alone and without being in combination with a semitrailer.

**10. Lighting Requirements for Farm Tractors and Implements of Husbandry.** Every farm tractor and every self-propelled unit of farm equipment or implement of husbandry manufactured or assembled after January 1, 1972, shall be equipped with the following lamps and reflectors:

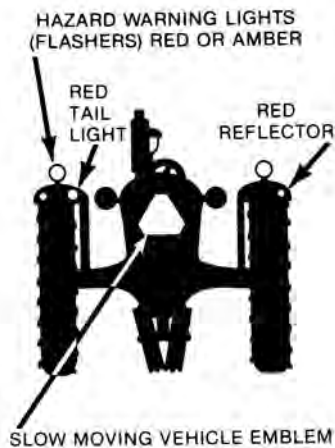
- a. Two head lamps.
- b. One taillight mounted as far to left as practicable.
- c. Two red reflectors.
- d. Vehicular hazard warning lights (flashers) which show white or amber to the front, and red or amber to the rear. These lights must be activated when the vehicle is being operated on any highway. See diagram.

*Slow Moving Vehicle Emblem*





## REAR



**11. Slow-Moving Vehicle Emblem.** This emblem is now a requirement for all slow-moving vehicles. Slow-moving vehicles are those designed to operate at a maximum speed of 25 mph or less, and the term includes all vehicles, farm and other machinery, and road machinery being drawn by animals or by slow-moving motor vehicles.

a. The use of this emblem is prohibited on any other than a slow-moving vehicle. It must not be used on other vehicles or on stationary objects.

b. Exceptions. The following do not need the special emblem:

1) A vehicle being used in actual construction work while traveling within the limits of a construction area marked as required by the State Highway Commission;

2) An implement or machinery being towed by a slow-moving vehicle bearing an emblem if this emblem remains visible.

**12. Unlawful Equipment.** It is unlawful to operate on a highway any vehicle with wheels having cleats, lugs, flanges, studs, spikes, or other extensions on the rim which would damage the road. This does not prevent the use of tire chains for safety.

---

### 14.3 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS-LIMITATIONS (note Exceptions)

**1. Speed Limits.** (See Appendix A, page 14-16)

**2. Height.** No vehicle, including the load it is hauling, may be more than 14 feet in height from ground to the top of the load. The driver is responsible for determining that his load will safely pass under any bridge or

overpass on his route.

**3. Width.** Vehicles including loads transported may not exceed 102 inches in width. (See exceptions.)

#### 4. Maximum Lengths:

a. Single motor vehicle other than a truck tractor is 45 feet. (See exceptions on page 14-12).

b. A semitrailer may not exceed 59 feet when operated in a truck tractor and semitrailer combination.

c. A semitrailer or trailer may not exceed a length of 28-1/2 feet each when operated in a truck tractor, semitrailer, and trailer combination.

d. No combination of vehicles, other than a truck tractor-trailer combination may exceed 65 feet. (See exceptions.)

**5. Vehicle Combinations.** No passenger vehicle or other motor vehicle with an unloaded weight of less than 2,500 pounds may be coupled with more than one other vehicle. Not more than three vehicles may be operated in a combination.

**6. Load Limits.** The greatest weight allowed for any vehicle or combination of vehicles including the load is 80,000 pounds. Load limits are based upon the size of the vehicle, the number and distance between axles, and also on the tire size. (See exceptions.) Under certain conditions, vehicles may legally exceed 80,000 pounds by obtaining an oversize/overweight permit through the Texas Department of Transportation Permit Office.

**7. Unloading and Additional Registration.** If the gross weight of your vehicle is found to exceed the maximum gross weight allowed by law plus a tolerance of 5%, you may be required to unload to the limit provided by law plus the tolerance, or if the axle weight is found to exceed the maximum allowed, the driver may be required to rearrange the cargo or unload the vehicle to the limits provided. Trucks carrying livestock, timber or pulpwood, or agricultural products in their natural state from the place of production to the place of market or first processing shall not be required to unload any portion of the load. Trucks registered for less than the load they are hauling must secure additional registration up to the legal limit from the nearest County Tax Assessor-Collector or the nearest practical point if hauling livestock or perishables.

**8. Extensions Over Front and Rear.** No vehicle may carry a load extending more than three feet beyond



the front nor more than four feet beyond the rear, unless a special permit is obtained. When any load extends more than four feet beyond the rear, there must be attached on the extreme rear of such extension, a red flag at least twelve inches square during daylight hours and at night a burning red light visible for 500 feet. (See exceptions.) Motor vehicles or combinations thereof used exclusively for the transportation of poles or pipes may exceed the length or extension limits over front and rear of a vehicle, except that such vehicles may not exceed 65 feet in length and may be operated only between sunrise and sunset.

**9. Towing.** When one vehicle is towing another, the drawbar, chain, rope, cable, or other connection must not be longer than fifteen feet from one vehicle to the other. This 15-foot limit does not apply to pole trailers. When a chain, rope, or cable is used as a connection, a white flag not less than twelve inches square must be attached to it.

**10. Metal Tires.** Vehicles, trailers, etc., weighing 5,000 pounds or more, with metal tires, may not be operated on a highway without a special permit.

**11. Transporting Loose Materials.** No person shall load or transport any loose material on or over the public highways, such as dirt, sand, gravel, wood chips, or other material except agricultural products in their natural state, that is capable of blowing or spilling from a vehicle unless:

a. The bed carrying the load must be completely enclosed on both sides and on the front and on the rear by a tailgate, board or panel, and all must be so constructed as to prevent the escape of any part of the load by blowing or spilling.

b. The top of the load must be covered with a canvas, tarpaulin, or other covering firmly secured to the front and the back to prevent the escape of any part of the load because of blowing or spilling. This requirement does not apply to any load-carrying compartment that completely encloses the load or to the transporting of any load of loose materials that are not blowing or spilling over the top of the load-carrying compartment.

---

#### 14.4 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS EXCEPTIONS TO STANDARD VEHICLE SIZE REQUIREMENTS

1. Water well drilling machinery, highway building or maintenance machinery, farm tractors, and implements of husbandry or vehicles hauling same are exempt from width limitations on all highways except

the Interstate system when operated during daylight hours.

2. A single motor vehicle used only to transport seed cotton modules, cotton, or equipment used in transporting or processing of cotton may operate up to 120 inches in width provided the vehicle is registered with a "Cotton Vehicle" license plate. Vehicles carrying cylindrically shaped bales of hay may not exceed 144 inches in width.

3. Motor buses with air brakes that have three or more axles or four tires on the rear axle may be 45 feet long; otherwise 35 feet.

4. The length requirements for vehicles and combinations of vehicles do not apply if they are operated only within city limits.

5. Load limits may vary according to the size of the vehicle, the number of axles and distance between the axles, and the size of tires that the vehicle is equipped with.

6. The State Highway Commission may lower load limits on farm- and ranch-to-market roads. Signs showing limits allowed are posted to give notice of such action.

7. A combination of vehicles, other than truck tractor combinations, of not more than 90 feet long may be used from sunrise to sunset to haul poles, piling, and unrefined timber from the forest to a mill not more than 125 miles away.

8. For a fee of 120 per year, a combination of vehicles, other than truck tractor combinations, of not more than 75 feet long may be used to haul poles for electric power line maintenance from sunrise to sunset at a speed not to exceed 50 mph.

Exception to the rear extension. A load may extend more than four feet beyond the rear of a trailer if the load consists of a motor vehicle that:

a. is designed and intended to be carried at the rear of the trailer;

b. is used or intended to be used to load or unload a commodity on or off the trailer;

c. does not extend more than seven feet beyond the rear of the trailer; or

d. complies with each applicable Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulation.

9. A single motor vehicle used only to transport seed

cotton modules, cotton, or equipment used in transporting or processing of cotton may not exceed a length of 48 feet.

10. Fire department vehicles are exempt from length, width, and weight regulations.

11. A combination of vehicles used to transport a combine that is used for farm custom harvesting may have an overall length of not more than 75 feet.

---

## 14.5 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS OPERATING RULES

1. **Coasting.** It is unlawful for a commercial motor vehicle to coast down any grade even with the clutch disengaged while the transmission is left in gear. If it is necessary to shift to a lower gear, do so before starting down the hill.

2. **Following.** When one truck is following another truck or vehicle, it must keep far enough back to allow another vehicle to overtake and enter the space between them safely. This does not prevent a truck from overtaking and passing another vehicle.

### 3. Railroad Grade Crossing.

a. Outside a business district or residence district any school bus carrying a school child and all other buses carrying passengers for hire must stop at all railroad grade crossings unless a traffic control signal or police officer directs traffic to proceed.

b. All super-heavy equipment such as crawler type tractors, steam shovels, derricks, rollers, etc., must stop for all railroad grade crossings.

Trucks carrying explosives must stop at railroad grade crossings. These provisions do not apply to streetcar crossings, abandoned tracks, industrial switching tracks, or where a traffic signal or officer directs traffic to proceed.

4. **Vehicles Transporting Hazardous Materials.** The Department has adopted the U.S. Department of Transportation Hazardous Materials Regulations. Copies of these regulations may be obtained from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C.

---

## 14.6 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS SAFETY PRACTICES

1. **Right Turns with Large Equipment.** Tractor-trailers and long wheelbase trucks and buses, when turning right, must have curb clearance for the rear wheels. Since they cannot stay in the proper lane while

turning, they should turn by one of these methods:

a. Approach the corner in the proper lane, about four feet from the curb (close enough to keep a car from passing on the right). As soon as the front wheels pass the corner, turn wide to the right, swinging over the center of the side street if necessary, in order for the right rear wheel to clear the curb.

b. If the street into which you are turning is narrow, it may be necessary to approach as above, then swing left enough to place the right rear wheel in position to miss the curb (but not far enough away to invite passing on the right), then turn sharply right into the narrow street or driveway.

You cannot watch too carefully when you are on your own side of the road. This is even more true while turning in a large vehicle, when you must be on the wrong side of the road part of the time.

2. **Safe Backing Practices.** A large or long vehicle is much more difficult to back safely than a smaller one. These practices are recommended.

a. When you must back, get out and walk around your truck and make certain there is nothing behind. Then back immediately and watch carefully.

b. Use both rearview mirrors. You can't see the right side while hanging out the left door.

c. If necessary to back some distance, stop part way, then get out and check your progress.

d. Try to have someone standing in a safe place to guide you by signaling.

e. Park where you will not have to back to get away from the parking place.

f. Never back around an intersection corner to turn around.

g. If you have to back in or out of a driveway, where possible, back into the driveway from the street so that you can drive out forward and see where you are going.

h. When backing over a sidewalk into a street, stop at the sidewalk to make especially certain that there is no child playing behind or close by. Stop again at the curb to make a last check on traffic before backing into the street.

i. Don't depend entirely upon your rear vision mirror.

**3. Safe Passing of Two-Wheeled Vehicles.** Motorcycles and bicycles are lighter and more subject to wind effects than 4-wheeled vehicles are. Due to this, special care must be taken when passing.

a. Aerodynamic effects around a large vehicle can cause a two-wheeled vehicle to be suddenly pulled toward the larger vehicle by two or three feet, depending on the relative speed between the two vehicles. You should always allow at least six feet to the left of the two-wheeled vehicle when you are passing.

b. When passing a two-wheeled vehicle, do not attempt to share the lane with that vehicle. Move into the next or oncoming lane to pass. If there is oncoming traffic, then slow and follow the two-wheeled vehicle until oncoming traffic clears.

---

## **14.7 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS REGISTRATION OF VEHICLES**

1. All vehicles must be registered in the county of residence.

2. The following vehicles are not required to be registered or inspected or to display a license plate when operated temporarily upon the highways:

a. Farm tractors.

b. Farm trailers, farm semitrailers, and certain fertilizer and cottonseed trailers weighing not more than 4,000 pounds gross.

c. Implements of husbandry.

d. Power sweepers.

e. Certain golfcarts.

3. The following vehicles when operated temporarily upon the highways are not required to be registered or inspected if the owner annually secures a distinguishing \$5.00 license plate and complies with other special conditions in the law:

a. Machinery for drilling water wells and construction machinery.

b. Farm trailers, farm semitrailers, cotton trailers, cottonseed trailers, and certain fertilizer trailers weighing over 4,000 pounds and not over 20,000 pounds gross.

4. Nonresident truck owners may be issued 30-day temporary registration permits for certain movements of farm products and machinery during harvesting season.

5. Under certain conditions, temporary registration permits and reduced registration rates for special vehicles may be obtained. See your County Tax Assessor-Collector or the Motor Vehicle Division of the Texas Department of Transportation for information.

6. Buyers temporary cardboard tags are recognized for 20 days; dealers metal registration plates may be used on any dealer-owned motor vehicle, except for commercial purposes -- vehicle inspection is required. Manufacturer's metal registration plate may be used for testing purposes only -- vehicle inspection is required. Dealers temporary cardboard tag may be used for demonstrating a vehicle for sale with motor vehicle inspection certificate attached, or for transporting or servicing vehicles without motor vehicle inspection certificate.

7. Farm registered vehicles, in addition to use for farm and ranch purposes, may be used as a means of passenger transportation for members of the family to attend church or school, to visit doctors for medical treatment or supplies, or for other necessities of the home or family - but not for gainful employment.

8. The period for which out-of-state registration plates are recognized in Texas after establishing residency or entering into gainful employment is 30 days.

9. For registration applications and detailed information, consult your County Tax Assessor-Collector or the Motor Vehicle Division of the Texas Department of Transportation. Additional information may also be obtained from Department of Public Safety publications pertaining to commercial vehicles.

---

## **14.8 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS FEDERAL REGULATIONS**

The Texas Department of Public Safety has adopted by reference the Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations, 49 Code of Federal Regulations, Parts 390-393 and 395-397. The Department has also adopted the Federal Hazardous Materials Regulations, Parts 171-173, 177, and 178. For detailed information concerning these regulations adopted by the Department of Public Safety, see Rule §3.59 and Rule §3.62 which are on file with the Texas Secretary of State.

## Truck Drivers Sharing the Road with Automobiles

Professional truck drivers can't just be good truck drivers. You have to be better than anyone else on the road. Truck drivers have the responsibility not only to safely deliver the nation's freight on time, but are industry's front-line defense against a bad image. Truck drivers should share the highways with automobiles and adhere to the following guidelines.

### ● Tailgating

Tailgating is the most common complaint car drivers have against truck drivers. It may not always be justified, but it is a frequent one. The professional:

- Keeps a gap between his or her truck and the car ahead in heavy traffic because the truck needs more space to stop. Remember, your truck looms frighteningly large in the mirror.
- Maintains a four-second following distance on the open road.
- Increases the distance of the gap to 6-8 seconds in bad weather (more reaction time) to compensate for poor traction and actions of less experienced car drivers.
- Remains alert to the driver who cut into the open space in front of the truck.
- Knows that tailgating or forming convoys promotes unsafe passes by groups of cars stacked up behind. If they do attempt to pass and don't make it, you and others could be involved in a serious accident.

### ● Speeding

Speeding by trucks is a common cause of accidents and another major complaint by motorists. Driving too fast for conditions - regardless of the posted speed - is dangerous. Remember, obeying the speed limit:

- Saves lives, injuries, and property damage.
- Increases fuel economy by as much as a mile per gallon at 55 mph rather than 65 mph.
- Saves wear and tear on tires, brakes, and engines.
- Allows sufficient time and space to stop after a hazard is sighted. Remember, your stopping distance increases at a much faster rate than your speed. If you double your speed, your stopping distance will be four times greater.

### ● Passing

The following are basic reminders truck drivers should follow when passing and dealing with slower traffic:

- Signals alone aren't enough. Before making a move, the professional truck driver makes sure that a lane change or passing maneuver can be made safely and without interfering with others.
- Don't alarm a car driver by overtaking too closely before moving into the passing lane. Leave some extra space before you pull back in.
- Remember that a truck pushes a wall of air ahead of it. To avoid buffeting cars, keep as much space as possible between the vehicles you pass.
- Slow traffic and congestion are facts of life to the professional truck driver. Keep cool and lay off the horn and flashing of the headlights.

### ● School Buses, Recreational Vehicles, and Others

The professional truck driver should be especially watchful for drivers of school buses, recreational vehicles, and drivers of rental trucks. These groups of drivers' levels of experience vary a great deal. Therefore, truck drivers should:

Give school buses as much room as possible. Watch for frequent stops to load and un-load children. Remember, the driver can be distracted by the children on the bus.

Realize drivers of RV's and smaller vehicles pulling trailers can be a problem because they may not have the professional skills or knowledge of the professional truck driver. These vehicles are especially susceptible to turbulence from big trucks, so reduce your speed and give them plenty of room. Pass these vehicles with care and as far to the left as safely possible.

### ● Hot and Cold

Summer driving has its own perils. Truck drivers should especially be on the lookout for:

- Lost, fatigued motorists on vacation who may suddenly stop, or swerve across several lanes of traffic to an exit.
- Overloaded cars with poor visibility and/or drivers distracted by kids and pets.

- Highway construction projects where roads suddenly turn into narrow lanes with confusing signs. Heavy equipment and pedestrians are often nearby.
- Winter ice and snow mean gearing down on grades to avoid wheel-spinning and brake lock-up which can lead to jackknifing. If you find a traffic jam-up and multiple vehicle accidents, stay back and wait for them to clear before trying to get your rig through.

#### ● Attitude

A good attitude is a professional truck driver's badge of honor. Sharing the roads with automobiles must be a safety concern for the professional driver.

Test Your Knowledge
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. What is the maximum speed limit for heavy trucks on the highway at night?</li> <li>2. What should be the first action of the driver of a disabled truck or bus?</li> <li>3. Clearance lamps, side marker lamps, or reflectors mounted on or near the front of a vehicle should be what color?</li> <li>4. What is the greatest height allowed by state law for a vehicle including its load?</li> <li>5. What should you do when hauling equipment that is wider, heavier or longer than the law permits?</li> <li>6. What type of vehicle must stop at all railroad crossings?</li> </ol>
These questions may be on your test. If you can't answer all, reread sections 14.1 thru Appendix A.

## APPENDIX A:

### SPEED LIMITS

All drivers are required to obey posted maximum and minimum speed limits. These limits are designed to provide for the orderly flow of traffic under normal driving conditions. During periods of heavy traffic, inclement weather, low visibility, or other poor driving conditions, speed must be adjusted so that accidents will be avoided. The following chart shows the maximum speed limits for all vehicles under different conditions. **Drivers must be aware that cities and counties have the authority to change these limits.**

	Daytime (MPH)	Nighttime (MPH)
<b>URBAN DISTRICT</b>	30	30
<b>ALLEY</b>	15	15
<b>BEACHES</b>	15	15
<b>COUNTY ROADS</b> adjacent to a public beach (if declared by the commissioners court of the county)	15	15
<b>HIGHWAY NUMBERED BY THIS STATE OR THE UNITED STATES OUTSIDE AN URBAN DISTRICT</b>		
Passenger cars, motorcycles, light truck, passenger car or light truck towing a trailer or semi-trailer, truck or truck-tractor, truck or truck-tractor towing a trailer or semi-trailer, buses, school activity bus	70	65
School buses that have passed a commercial vehicle inspection	60	60
<b>FARM TO MARKET AND RANCH TO MARKET ROADS</b>		
Passenger cars, motorcycle, light truck, passenger car or light truck towing a trailer or semi-trailer, buses, school activity bus	70	65
School buses that have passed a commercial vehicle inspection	60	60
<b>FARM TO MARKET AND RANCH TO MARKET ROADS</b>		
Trucks or truck-tractor, trucks or truck-tractor towing a trailer or semi-trailer	60	55
<b>HIGHWAY NOT NUMBERED BY THIS STATE OR THE UNITED STATES AND OUTSIDE AN URBAN DISTRICT</b>		
Passenger cars, motorcycles, light truck, passenger car or light truck towing a trailer or semi-trailer, truck or truck-tractor, truck or truck-tractor towing a trailer or semi-trailer, buses, school activity bus	60	55
School buses that have not passed a commercial vehicle inspection or are traveling on a highway not numbered by the United States or this state	50	50